

# Chinese Companion I

a pronunciation and character guide to  
Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I



by Carl T. Limsico  
Edited by Lin Jin Ren

**Chinese Companion I**  
**a pronunciation and character guide to Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I**  
by Carl T. Limsico  
Edited by Lin Jin Ren

**Cover Picture** by Carol Yang

© 2003 CRL Software. All rights reserved.

© Transcripts are copyright of Simon and Schuster Audio, a division of Simon & Schuster, Inc.

Published by  
CRL Software  
900 King Drive Suite #123  
Daly City, CA, 94015 USA

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for the damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the author.

**ISBN 0-97441-050-0**

Manufactured in the United States of America

## About The Authors

**Carl T. Limsico** is an instructor at the University of California at Berkeley Extension. He has written several programming course materials and tutorials for UC Berkeley Extension. In addition, he has developed software programs to aid learning. He has a degree in Computer Science from the University of California at Berkeley.

**Lin Jin Ren** has been a freelance writer and translator of Chinese and English for over 10 years. He has a Master's Degree in Chinese Literature from Qinghua University in Beijing.

For other books, updates and other information, please visit our website at:

<http://www.short-circuit.com/books>

Please send your comments, questions by email to [limsico@ituner.com](mailto:limsico@ituner.com)

# Contents

Contents .....	1
Introduction .....	2
I.    Why Learn Mandarin? .....	2
II.   Why Use The Pimsleur System? .....	2
III.  Is The Pimsleur System Enough? .....	2
IV.   Enter The Companion .....	2
About The Companion .....	3
I.    Organization .....	3
II.   Using The Companion .....	4
III.  Conventions Used .....	4
Chinese Writing .....	5
I.    History of Chinese Writing .....	5
II.   Chinese Writing Examples .....	5
Pinyin Romanization System .....	7
I.    Origin of Pinyin .....	7
II.   Elements of Pinyin .....	7
III.  Initial Sounds .....	8
IV.   Final Sounds .....	10
V.    Tones .....	12
VI.   Pronunciation Rules .....	13
Unit Transcripts	
Unit 1.....	1-1
Unit 2.....	2-1
Unit 3.....	3-1
Unit 4.....	4-1
Unit 5.....	5-1
Unit 6.....	6-1
Unit 7.....	7-1
Unit 8.....	8-1
Unit 9.....	9-1
Unit 10.....	10-1
Unit 11.....	11-1
Unit 12.....	12-1
Unit 13.....	13-1
Unit 14.....	14-1
Unit 15.....	15-1
Unit 16.....	16-1
Unit 17.....	17-1
Unit 18.....	18-1
Unit 19.....	19-1
Unit 20.....	20-1
Unit 21.....	21-1
Unit 22.....	22-1
Unit 23.....	23-1
Unit 24.....	24-1
Unit 25.....	25-1
Unit 26.....	26-1
Unit 27.....	27-1
Unit 28.....	28-1
Unit 29.....	29-1
Unit 30.....	30-1
Glossary .....	A-1
I.    Vocabulary Words .....	A-1
II.   Particles .....	A-7
III.  Phrases .....	A-7
IV.   Locations .....	A-8
V.    Numbers .....	A-9
VI.   Measure Words .....	A-10
VII.  Common Chinese Names .....	A-10

## Introduction

### I. Why Learn Mandarin?

Nǐ hǎo! 你好!

Over two-thirds of one billion people in China and millions more in Asia and North America, greet each other with the phrase above. Wouldn't you feel left behind, if you were excluded from this rather large club? In today's world, it is essential to be able to communicate with such a large number of people.

The phrase above is Mandarin Chinese for *Hello*. Mandarin is spoken by more people than any other language in the world, English included. Most non-English speakers are trying to learn English. If you already know English, shouldn't you be learning Mandarin as your next language?

There are many reasons for studying Mandarin. It could be to improve your marketability, speak with friends, to order in a restaurant, to travel to China or just for your own personal growth. Whatever your reasons, learning Mandarin is a long and challenging, but ultimately rewarding endeavor.

### II. Why Use The Pimsleur System?

Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese is an excellent system to learn a language quickly and retain it. Instead of bombarding you with word lists that you'll forget withindays, or even hours, its slow but sure repetition technique will make elements of a language stick, even to monolinguals, like most Americans!

### III. Is The Pimsleur System Enough?

Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese is excellent at teaching listening and speaking. However, it does not teach reading and writing. While the lack of a reading and writing guide is fine for most European languages, since they usually have an alphabet, it is a glaring absence in Mandarin Chinese.

Instead of an alphabet, the Chinese language uses characters based on pictographs. This means that the characters represent an idea or meaning instead of a sound. As a result, just knowing how to say a Chinese character does not mean you can read or write it. This is one of the reasons that Chinese is one of the most challenging languages to learn.

### IV. Enter The Companion

The Chinese Companion for Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I (Companion from now on) is a guide that fills the gaps in Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I (PMC). The Companion includes:

- Complete transcripts of units 1 through 30 of PMC
- Introduction to the Pinyin Romanization System
- English translation of the conversations and dialogue as well as in Chinese using simplified characters, traditional characters and Pinyin romanization
- Complete glossary of all the vocabulary words in PMC along with their simplified characters, traditional characters and Pinyin romanization
- Footnotes, comments and corrections to PMC

## About The Companion

### I. Organization

The Companion is divided into the following sections:

#### ***Chinese Writing***

This section briefly describes the two main types of Chinese writing.

#### ***The Pinyin Romanization System***

This section describes the origin of Pinyin and its usage. It also presents complete tables of its components (initial sounds, final sounds and tones). In addition, it presents the pronunciation rules.

#### ***Unit Transcripts***

The transcripts of all the units from 1 to 30 of Pimsleur Mandarin Chinese I are placed here. Each unit contains a list of new vocabulary words, followed by the transcript itself. The transcript includes:

- Narration and instructions (in English and Pinyin)
- Pinyin conversations with translation into English, Simplified and Traditional Chinese
- Highlighted new words
- Highlighted pronunciation guides
- Minute indicators

#### ***Glossary***

The glossary contains all the vocabulary words in Pimsleur Mandarin Chinese I. Each word is categorized alphabetically in English and includes the following information:

- English word/Description
- Type (part of speech)
- Pinyin
- Traditional Chinese
- Simplified Chinese
- Unit Number

In addition to the vocabulary words, there are separate lists of Chinese phrases, places, numbers and names.

## II. Using The Companion

The Companion is not a replacement for PMC, but a complement to it. The Companion works most effectively if you have PMC available and have already listened to it at least once. While the Companion can be used your first time through PMC, you might not get the most out of the excellent listening and speaking skills that PMC provides.

Also, the Companion is not a tutorial on how to write Chinese characters. This is a large topic and deserves a separate guide. What the Companion does is get you started. It shows the Chinese characters and the Pinyin romanization system as they correspond to the sounds in PMC.

The Companion teaches Pinyin, which allows you to see how Chinese words are pronounced. While Pinyin is a very good approximation, try to listen to the actual pronunciation of the Chinese words through PMC.

## III. Conventions Used

- The English narrator instructions are in Tahoma text
- English text to be repeated is *italicized Tahoma* text
- The Chinese speaker that you imitate (in Pinyin) is in Times Roman text
- The Chinese narrator instructions are also in (Times Roman) text, but are (surrounded by parenthesis)

### **Conversation Format**

The instructions are given in English or Pinyin on the left hand column and the response that you need to give is on the right hand column.

Pinyin/English Instructions	Pinyin Response
-----------------------------	-----------------

Each line of the conversations include the English translation, the simplified Chinese writing and the traditional Chinese writing.

Pinyin	Simplified Chinese
English	Traditional Chinese

### **New Word Format**

New words are indicated by the following table:

#	Pinyin	Simplified Chinese	Traditional Chinese
---	--------	--------------------	---------------------

### **Symbols Used**

◀ Indicates a section where PMC shows how to pronounce a specific word.

03:00 Located on the right hand side, these indicators show the location of the current text in minutes and seconds as they correspond to, in the audio.

## Chinese Writing

### I. History of Chinese Writing

The Chinese writing system was invented in the 2<sup>nd</sup> millennium BC. It was codified in 1500 BC and then systemized between 200 BC and 200 AD. It remains in use to this day.

It is the writing, instead of the language that unifies China. Although the dialects around the country are completely different, the writing is exactly the same. Credit goes mainly to the first emperor of China, Qin Shi Huang Di (秦始皇帝) who made a decree that there be a single Chinese script, now referred to as Traditional Chinese. Before his time, China was a patchwork of people of diverse dialects and writing systems. It was very difficult to communicate with people from different parts of the country. Wanting to unify in his country, the first emperor declared a single standard writing system. After his declaration, all Chinese citizens would now be able to communicate with each other through a common script.

Traditional characters are the most widespread Chinese writing style. These characters evolved naturally from their original pictograph forms, but has remained unchanged for a long time. They are used in most Chinese communities outside of China, including Taiwan, The United States, Canada and anywhere else you might find a Chinatown.

During the 1950s, a new script using simplified Chinese character was introduced. They are based on traditional Chinese characters, but contains characters with a reduced number of strokes. Simplified characters were developed to make Chinese writing easier to learn, read, write and memorize. They are used in almost all parts of Mainland China and are gaining favor in countries like Singapore and most American universities.

### II. Chinese Writing Examples

Instead of having an alphabet, Chinese writing consists of characters that are composed of strokes and has roots in a pictograph. Each character has a basic meaning and an associated single syllable sound.

Combining two different characters often results in new words. Some are obvious, others not quite. For example, the meaning of the following words can be deduced from knowing the meaning of the individual characters:

First character	meaning	Second character	meaning	Resulting word	Combined Meaning
电 diàn	electric	话 huà	talk	电话 diànhuà	telephone
明 míng	bright	白 bái	white	明白 míngbai	to understand
星 xīng	star	期 qī	phase	星期 xīngqī	week



Let us now look at the writing itself. If we wanted to write the following English sentence:

Would you like to eat a little something?

In Traditional Chinese, it would look like:

你們想吃一點兒東西嗎？

In Simplified Chinese, the same sentence would look like:

你们想吃一点儿东西吗？

Note that the Simplified version contains fewer strokes, but is generally very similar to the Traditional version.

Regardless of what version is used, Chinese writing is not phonetic. There still needs to be a way to help pronounce this characters. The Pinyin Romanization was developed to address this. Our example above would be written as the following in Pinyin:

Nǐmen xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

In the next section, we will discuss Pinyin in greater detail.

# The Pinyin (拼音) Romanization System

## I. Origin of Pinyin

Pinyin (Pīnyīn) is a system of romanization of Chinese written characters. It uses an alphabet to get a close approximation of Chinese sounds. It replaced the Wades-Giles system (1859) and has been in use since 1958, when it was introduced in the People's Republic of China. It was officially adopted in 1979. Since then, it has been in use extensively in Mainland China and Singapore but not in Taiwan and Hong Kong.

The Western media, the United Nations, American universities, and the US Government have adopted the Pinyin spelling to render Chinese names and terms, although they usually omit the accent marks required to indicate the tones.

For example, the city of Beijing is written as Peking in the Wades-Giles system. In Pinyin, it is written as Beijing or Běijīng with tone marks. Even without the tone marks, Pinyin is already more accurate than Wades-Giles.

The reasons for adopting Pinyin include:

- promoting a national language
- establishing a means for writing non-Chinese (minority) languages in China
- encouraging foreigners to learn Chinese

## II. Elements of Pinyin

Any system is useful only after a significant study of the rules. With Pinyin, you can pronounce most Chinese words with accuracy as long as the Chinese words are spelled out using Pinyin conventions.

In Pinyin, every character in Chinese can be spelled out with the following components:

- initial sounds (consonants)
- final sounds (vowels or compound vowels and consonants)
- four tones (plus the neutral tone)

In the next three sections, we will show all the above with examples. The examples will include both an English sound example, and Chinese examples in Pinyin, simplified Chinese and the English translation of the word.

## III. Initial Sounds

Pinyin Initial Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Examples
b	<b>b</b> as in <b>boat</b>	bù (不/no) bān (班/section)
ch	<b>ch</b> as in <b>chart</b>	chī (吃/to eat) cháng (长/long)
d	<b>d</b> as in <b>deep</b>	duō (多/many) dà (大/big)
f	<b>f</b> as in <b>fun</b>	fàn (饭/rice) fēi (飞/to fly)
g	<b>g</b> as in <b>good</b>	gěi (给/to give) guān (关/to close)
h	<b>h</b> as in <b>help</b>	hěn (很/very) hùi (会/can)
k	<b>k</b> as in <b>kart</b>	kàn (看/to look) kāi (开/to open)
l	<b>l</b> as in <b>love</b>	lù (路/road) lǐ (里/inside)
m	<b>m</b> as in <b>moon</b>	měi (美/beautiful) mén (门/door)
n	<b>n</b> as in <b>no</b>	nǐ (你/you) néng (能/able to)
p	<b>p</b> as in <b>push</b>	píjiǔ (啤酒/beer) pàng (胖/fat)
s	<b>s</b> as in <b>sing</b>	sān (三/ three) sè (色/color)
sh	<b>sh</b> as in <b>shell</b>	shàng (上/up) shì (是/is)
t	<b>t</b> as in <b>teach</b>	tā (她/she) tài (太/too)
w	<b>w</b> as in <b>well</b>	wǒ (我/me) wèn (问/to ask)
y	<b>y</b> as in <b>young</b>	yīng (英/brave) yě (也/also)

Table 1 - Initial Sounds with close approximation to English

Pinyin Initial Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Examples
j	soft j as in <b>dya</b>	jiā (家/family) jìn (进/to enter)
r	combination of r and a soft y	rén (人/person) rè (热/hot)
z	ds as in <b>yards</b>	zài (在/located) zǎo (早/morning)

Table 2 - Initial sounds that are slightly different than those in English

Pinyin Initial Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Examples
c	ts as in <b>sits</b>	cóng (从/from) cài (菜/food)
q	ch as in <b>change</b>	qù (去/to go) qián (钱/money)
x	similar to sh but with mouth wider apart sie in <b>sieve</b>	xiè (谢/to thank) xiǎo (小/small)
zh	j as in <b>jeans</b>	zhōng (中/middle) zhù (注/to live)

Table 3 - Initial sounds that are different than those in English

## IV. Final Sounds

Table below shows the final sound combinations of primary vowels (listed on the left column) and final vowels (listed on the top row).

	-a	-e	-i	-o	-u	-n	-ng	-an	-ang	-ong	-ai	-ao
a	a		ai	ao		an	ang					
e	e		ei			en	eng					
i	i	ia	ie		iu	in	ing	ian	iang	iong		iao
o	o				ou		ong					
u	u	ua	ui	uo		un		uan	uang		uai	
ü	ü		üe									
er	er											

Table 4 - Final Sound Matrix

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
a	<b>a</b> in <b>ma</b>	bā (八/eight)
ai	<b>uy</b> in <b>buy</b>	mǎi (买/to buy)
ao	ow in <b>how</b>	hǎo (好/good)
an	un in <b>fun</b>	fàn (饭/rice)
ang	ongue in <b>tongue</b>	mǎng (忙/busy)

Table 5 - Final Sounds (a)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
e	uh in <b>duh</b>	de (的/possession particle)
ei	ey in <b>hey</b>	hēi (黑/black)
en	un in <b>under</b> or <b>hun</b> (as in Atilla)	hěn (很/very)
eng	ung in <b>sung</b>	lěng (冷/cold)

Table 6 – Final Sounds (e)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
i (after ch, sh, zh)	ir in <b>fir</b>	chī (吃/to eat)
i (after c, s, z)	<b>i</b> is silent	zì (子/word)
i	ee in <b>bee</b>	xī (西/west)
ia	<b>yah</b>	jiā (家/home)
ie	<b>yeah</b>	xiè (谢/thank)
iu	<b>oh</b>	liù (六/six)
in	in in <b>gin</b>	jìn (进/enter)
ing	ing in <b>thing</b>	míng (名/name)
ian	<b>yen</b>	qián (钱/money)

iang	<b>young</b>	liǎng (两/two)
iong	<b>yong</b>	xióng (熊/bear)
iao	eow in <b>meow</b>	xiǎo (小/small)

Table 7 – Final Sounds (i)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
o	<b>awe</b>	wǒ (我/me)
ou	<b>owe</b>	yǒu (有/to have)
ong	ong in <b>song</b>	zhōng (中/middle)

Table 8 – Final Sounds (o)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
u	ew in <b>chew</b>	qù (去/to go)
ua	<b>hwa</b>	huā (花/flower)
ui	ey in <b>whey</b>	duì (对/correct)
uo	<b>hwo</b>	zuò (坐/to sit)
un	oon in <b>boon</b>	chūn (春/spring)
uan	<b>one</b>	yuǎn (远/far)
uang	<b>wong</b>	huáng (黄/yellow)
uai	<b>why</b>	kuài (块/fast)

Table 9 – Final Sounds (u)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
ü	<b>rue</b> with lips pursed	nǚ (女/woman)
üe	like <b>ü</b> above, but with an <b>eh</b> ending	lūè (掠/to plunder)

Table 10 – Final Sounds (ü)

Final Sound	English Sound Example	Chinese Example
er	ir in <b>sir</b>	zhèr (这儿/here)

Table 11 – Final Sounds (er)

## V. Tones

In Mandarin, even more important than pronouncing the initial and final sounds accurately is pronouncing the tones correctly. This is because pronouncing a word with the wrong intonation results in different meanings.

Notice the change in meaning of some syllables with different tones:

First Tone	Second Tone	Third Tone	Fourth Tone
shī (诗/poetry)	shí (十/ten)	shǐ (使/to enable)	shì (是/is)
qī (七/seven)	qí (奇/to ride)	qǐ (起/to rise)	qì (汽/steam)
dā (搭/to build)	dá (答/to answer)	dǎ (打/to play)	dà (大/big)
bī (逼/to force)	bí (鼻/nose)	bǐ (笔/pen)	bì (避/to avoid)

Table 12 - Changes in Tones changes the meaning

As seen from the examples above, there are four tones in Mandarin, plus the neutral tone.

	Description		Tone	Examples
1	First tone	high level tone	→	jiē (street/街) chī (eat/吃)
2	Second tone	rising tone	↗	rén (person/人) chá (tea/茶)
3	Third tone	falling/rising tone	↘↗	wǒ (me/我) hǎo (good/好)
4	Fourth tone	falling tone	↘	shì (is/是) èr (two/二)
	Neutral tone	no change in tone		ma (question particle/吗) ne (how about/呢)

Table 13 – Tone Descriptions

## VI. Pronunciation Rules

In Mandarin, there are a few rules involving pronunciation and tones. Fortunately for the beginner, there are only a few of them. They are listed below.

### General Rules

1. Each character in Mandarin is pronounced with one syllable.
2. The /i/ in *si*, *ci* and *zi* are not pronounced.

### Tone Mark Rules

1. The tone mark is always placed over the vowel of a syllable.
2. If the syllable contains a compound vowel, the tone mark is placed over the primary vowel (see table 4).
3. Syllables pronounced with the neutral tone have no tone mark.

### Combination Rules

1. The second syllable of doubled characters are always pronounced with a neutral tone.

Single	Double
xiè 谢	xièxiè 谢谢
mā 妈	māmā 妈妈

Table 14 – doubled character rule example

2. The second syllable of some two syllable words have a neutral tone.

Pinyin	Chinese/English
shénme	什么/ what
míngbai	明白/ to understand

Table 15 - two syllable words examples

3. When two syllables pronounced with the falling/rising tone (3<sup>rd</sup> tone) individually, the first syllable changes to a rising tone (2<sup>nd</sup> tone).

Note that the Pinyin tone marks remain unchanged.

Written	Pronunciation
hěn hǎo (很好)	hén hǎo

Table 16 – 3<sup>rd</sup> tone rule example

### Specific Word Rules

1. 不(bù) tone change.  
bù is pronounced with a falling tone, except when the character following it is also pronounced with a falling tone (4<sup>th</sup> tone).

When the character following it is pronounced with a falling tone (4<sup>th</sup> tone), bù is changed to a rising tone (2<sup>nd</sup> tone). The Pinyin tone marks are changed to reflect this.



Combination	Pinyin Change
bù by itself	bù (no change)
bù + high level tone character (1 <sup>st</sup> tone)	bù (no change)
bù + rising tone character (2 <sup>nd</sup> tone)	bù (no change)
bù + falling/rising tone character (3 <sup>rd</sup> tone)	bù (no change)
bù + falling tone character (4 <sup>th</sup> tone)	bú (rising tone/2 <sup>nd</sup> tone)
bù + neutral tone character	bù (no change)

Table 17 - 不(bù) tone change

2. 一(yī) tone change

Yī is pronounced with a high level tone (1<sup>st</sup> tone) when it is used in counting as well as when it is used by itself.

When the character following it is pronounced with a falling tone (4<sup>th</sup> tone), then yī is pronounced with a high level tone (2<sup>nd</sup> tone).

For other everything else, yī changes to the falling tone (4<sup>th</sup> tone).

Combination	Pinyin Change
yī by itself	yī (no change)
yī + high level tone character (1 <sup>st</sup> tone)	yì (falling tone/4 <sup>th</sup> tone)
yī + rising tone character (2 <sup>nd</sup> tone)	yì (falling tone/4 <sup>th</sup> tone)
yī + falling/rising tone character (3 <sup>rd</sup> tone)	yì (falling tone/4 <sup>th</sup> tone)
yī + falling tone character (4 <sup>th</sup> tone)	yí (rising tone/2 <sup>nd</sup> tone)
yī + neutral tone character	yī (no change)

Table 18 - 一(yī) tone change

## Unit 1

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	excuse me/sorry	duìbuqǐ	对不起	對不起
2.	English	Yīngwén	英文	英文
3.	can/able to/ know how to	huì	会	會
4.	speak, to	shuō	说	說
5.	you	nǐ	你	你
6.	no/not	bù	不	不
7.	(ma) question particle	ma	吗	嗎
8.	may I ask	qǐngwèn	请问	請問
9.	I/me	wǒ	我	我
10.	Common Language/ Mandarin Chinese	pǔtōnghuà	普通话	普通話
11.	a little/some	yìdiǎnr	一点儿	一點兒
12.	America	Měiguó	美国	美國
13.	people/person	rén	人	人
14.	(to be) am/is/are	shì	是	是

## II. Transcript

This is unit 1 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	男人：对不起。请问，你会说英文吗？
<b>Man:</b> Excuse me. Please let me ask, can you speak English?	男人：對不起。請問，你會說英文嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	女人：不会。我不会说英文。
<b>Woman:</b> No. I can't speak English.	女人：不會。我不會說英文。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	男人：我会说一点儿普通话。
<b>Man:</b> I can speak a little Mandarin.	男人：我會說一點兒普通話。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人：你是美国人吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Are you American?	女人：你是美國人嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	男人：是。我是美国人。
<b>Man:</b> Yes. I am American.	男人：是。我是美國人。

In the next few minutes, you will learn not only to understand this conversation, but to take part in it yourself. Imagine an American man meeting a Chinese woman. He wants to begin a conversation, so he says *Excuse me*.

1.	duìbuqǐ	对不起	對不起
----	---------	-----	-----

The Chinese speaker is going to repeat this word part by part, starting from the end. You are to repeat each part after him, trying to make your pronunciation sound exactly like his.

Be sure to repeat aloud. Duìbuqǐ.

How do you say *Excuse me* in Mandarin? Duìbuqǐ.

Now he wants to ask her if she can speak English. Here's the name of the *English language* in Mandarin. Listen and repeat.

2.	Yīngwén	英文	英文
----	---------	----	----

How do you say *English*? Yīngwén

Now say *Excuse me*. Duìbuqǐ.

You should repeat the correct response after the speaker.  
Try to make your pronunciation sound like his. Duìbuqǐ.

Say again *English*. Yīngwén

Now he wants to ask *Can you speak English?* First, the word *can*. Listen and repeat.

3.	hùi	会	會
----	-----	---	---

Say *Can*. Hùi

Here's the word *speak*. Listen and repeat.

03:00

4.	shuō	说	說
----	------	---	---

Say *Can speak*. Hùi shuō.

Here's how to say *You can speak*.  
Listen and repeat. Nǐ hùi shuō.

What part of that means *you*?

5.	nǐ	你	你
----	----	---	---

Say again *You can speak*. Nǐ hùi shuō.

Do you remember how to say *English*? Yīngwén

Say *Can speak*. Hùi shuō.

You've probably noticed that some words are pronounced with a rising or falling tone, and some are pronounced at a higher pitched than others. In Chinese, the tone is an important part in the pronunciation of the words and different tones indicate different meanings. You should imitate the speakers and try to make your pronunciation sound like theirs, paying careful attention to the intonation.

Say *You can speak*. Nǐ hùi shuō.

Try to say *You can speak English*. Nǐ hùi shuō Yīngwén.

◀ The tone in *Can speak* first falls then returns to a high level.  
Say it again. Hùi shuō.

Now here's how to say *Can't speak*.

Bú huì shuō.

Listen and repeat.

6.	bù	不	不
----	----	---	---

◀ The tones in that rose, fell and rose again.<sup>1</sup>

06:00

Say *Can't speak*.

Bú huì shuō.

◀ The 不(bú) pronounced with a rising tone is what makes that negative.

Say together *Can speak. Can't speak*.

Huì shuō. Bú huì shuō.

Here's how to ask *Can you speak?* Just listen.

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

7.	ma	吗	嗎
----	----	---	---

Listen and repeat.

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

◀ The 吗 (ma)<sup>2</sup> with a high level tone is used to ask a yes/no question in Mandarin.

Ask me if I can speak.

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

Now say *You can't speak*.

Nǐ bú huì shuō.

Ask again *Can you speak?*

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

Say *Excuse me*.

Duìbuqǐ.

You say that to get someone's attention. Now listen and repeat. *Please let me ask*.

8.	qǐngwèn	请问	請問
----	---------	----	----

◀ Did your tone match the speaker's? Notice especially the falling tone at the end.

Say *Please let me ask*.

Qǐngwèn.

This is how you ask for information.

09:00

Now say *Excuse me. Please let me ask*.

Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

Ask *Can you speak?*

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

Now say *English*.

Yīngwén

Try to ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Here's how to answer this question *No*.

Listen and repeat.

Bú huì.

◀ That's pronounced first with a rising tone then a falling tone.

Say again *No* or literally, *Can not*.

Bú huì.

And now say *You can't speak*.

Nǐ bú huì shuō.

<sup>1</sup> 不(nó/bù) is normally pronounced with a falling tone, except when it is followed by another character with falling tone. See specific word rule #1 in the pronunciation rules section of the Pinyin Romanization Chapter.

<sup>2</sup> 吗 (ma) is normally written in Pinyin with a neutral tone, although it sounds like a high level tone because it is used in asking questions.

◀ Your voice should fall, rise or remain at the same level, just as the speaker's does.

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Answer *No.*

Bú huì.

He says *I can speak*. Listen and repeat the word for *I*.

9.	wǒ	我	我
----	----	---	---

Try to say *I can speak*.

Wǒ huì shuō.

*I can speak English.*

Wǒ huì shuō Yīngwén.

Say *You can speak*.

Nǐ huì shuō.

Say again *I can speak*.

Wǒ huì shuō. \_\_\_\_\_

12:00

Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask*.

Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

Ask *Can you speak?*

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Answer *No.*

Bú huì.

Now say *I can't speak*.

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

Ask *Can you speak?*

Nǐ huì shuō ma?

Ask her if she can speak English.

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

In mainland China, the Mandarin language is referred to as the *common language*.

10.	pǔtōnghuà	普通话	普通話
-----	-----------	-----	-----

Listen and repeat.

pǔtōnghuà

◀ Did you hear the falling/rising and falling tones in that?

Say it again.

pǔtōnghuà

Say *common language*, meaning Mandarin Chinese.

pǔtōnghuà

Say *I can speak*.

Wǒ huì shuō.

Try to say *I can speak Mandarin*, as you would say in Mainland China.

Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà. \_\_\_\_\_

15:00

Tell me again that you can speak Mandarin.

Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Now try to say *I can't speak Mandarin*.

Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Say *You can speak Mandarin.* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.  
 Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask.* Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.  
 Try to ask me if I can speak Mandarin. Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Here's how to say *a little* or *some*. Listen and repeat.

11.	yìdiǎnr	一点儿	一點兒
-----	---------	-----	-----

◀ That begins with a falling tone.<sup>3</sup>

Say *Some* or *A little.* Yìdiǎnr.  
 Say *I can speak a little.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.  
 Say *I can speak Mandarin.* Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.  
*A little.* Yìdiǎnr.  
 Say *Excuse me.* Duìbuqǐ.  
 Ask *Can you speak English?* Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
 Try to say *I can speak a little English.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Yīngwén.  
 And now say *Mandarin* or literally, the *common language.* pǔtōnghuà  
 Ask *Can you speak Mandarin?* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?  
 How would you answer *No?* Bú huì.  
 Now say *I can speak a little Mandarin.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

18:00

She wants to ask him *Are you American?* Here's how to say *America*. Listen and repeat

12.	Měiguó	美国	美國
-----	--------	----	----

◀ Did you hear the rising tone at the end of this?

Say again *America.* Měiguó

Here's the word *people* or *person* in Mandarin. Listen and repeat.

13.	rén	人	人
-----	-----	---	---

◀ This word begins with a sound that we don't have in English. It's like a cross between an r and y. Listen and repeat again. rén

◀ This word is pronounced with a rising tone.  
 Say *person.* rén

<sup>3</sup> 一点儿(*some/yìdiǎnr*) is pronounced with a silent n in most parts of Mainland China. In Taiwan and some parts of Mainland China, it is the 儿(ér) character is not included, so the r is not pronounced. Note also that in writing the Pinyin, the e is omitted.

Do you remember how to say *America*? Měiguó

Now try to say *American person*. Měiguó rén

Here's the word that means *to be*. Listen and repeat.

14.	shì	是	是
-----	-----	---	---

◀ This word begins with a soft sh sound.  
Listen and repeat again.

shì

It's almost as if you were simply breathing out.  
Now you say *to be*.

shì

In Mandarin, this never changes form.  
Try to say *I am*.

Wǒ shì.

Try to say *I am American*.  
Or *I am an American person*.

Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Now say *You are*.

Nǐ shì.

Say *You are American*.

Nǐ shì Měiguó rén.

Try to ask *Are you?*

Nǐ shì ma?

Now ask *Are you American?*

Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Say *I can't speak English*.

Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask*.

Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

Ask *Can you speak Mandarin?*

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Ask *Can you speak Mandarin?*

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Ask again *Are you American?*

Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

What part of that means *are*?

shì

Use this word to answer *Yes*.

Shì.

Ask again *Are you American?*

Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Answer *Yes*.

Shì.

Say *Yes. I am American*.

Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Now sit back and listen to a Chinese conversation. The same one you heard at the beginning, just a few minutes ago

<b>Nánrén:</b> Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	男人：对不起。请问，你会说英文吗？
<b>Man:</b> Excuse me. Please let me ask, can you speak English?	男人：對不起。請問，你會說英文嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	女人：不会。我不会说英文。
<b>Woman:</b> I can't. I can't speak English.	女人：不會。我不會說英文。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	男人：我会说一点儿普通话。
<b>Man:</b> I can speak a little Mandarin.	男人：我會說一點兒普通話。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人：你是美国人嗎？
<b>Woman:</b> Are you American?	女人：你是美國人嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	男人：是。我是美国人。
<b>Man:</b> Yes. I am American.	男人：是。我是美國人。

Now imagine that you are the person sitting next to the Chinese woman and you want to begin a conversation.

Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask.*

**Nǚ:** Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

She doesn't answer.

Ask her if she can speak Mandarin.

**Nǚ:** Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

27:00

Still no answer. Now ask her if she can speak English.

**Nǚ:** Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

How does she answer *No*?

**Nǚrén:** Bú huì.

Now she says *I can't speak English.*

**Nǚrén:** Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

How does she ask you if you can speak Mandarin?

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Tell her you can speak a little.

**Nǚrén:** Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

How does she ask you if you are American?

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Tell her *Yes.*

**Nǚ:** Shì.

She'll ask you a question. Try to answer her truthfully.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	女人：你会说英文吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Can you speak English?	女人：你會說英文嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Huì. Wǒ huì shuō Yīngwén.	你：会。我会说英文。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I can speak English.	你：會。我會說英文。



She's got another question. Answer it by saying *a little*.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	<b>女人:</b> 你会说普通话吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Can you speak Mandarin?	<b>女人:</b> 你會說普通話嗎?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yìdiǎnr. Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	<b>你:</b> 一点儿。我会说一点儿普通话。
<b>You:</b> A little. I can speak a little Mandarin.	<b>你:</b> 一點兒。我會說一點兒普通話。

And that's true. Now you do speak a little Mandarin. Don't be concerned if you haven't made every response correctly. All that you have learned here will be reviewed in future units. If you've mastered about 80% of the material in this lesson, you're ready to move on to the next. Otherwise, you should invest the time in doing this unit over again.

This is the end of unit 1.

30:00

## Unit 2

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	good/well	hǎo	好	好
2.	(de) used to describe action/possession	de	的	的
3.	hello	nǐ hǎo	你好	你好
4.	How are you?	Nǐ hǎo ma?	你好吗?	你好嗎?
5.	thanks	xièxie	谢谢	謝謝
6.	very	hěn	很	很
7.	goodbye	zàijiàn	再见	再見

## II. Transcript

This is unit 2 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	女人: 对不起。请问, 你会说普通话吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Excuse me. Can you speak Mandarin?	女人: 对不起。請問, 你會說普通話嗎?
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.	男人: 我会说一点儿。
<b>Man:</b> I can speak a little.	男人: 我會說一點兒。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人: 你是美国人吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Are you American?	女人: 你是美國人嗎?
<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	男人: 是。你会说英文吗?
<b>Man:</b> Yes. Can you speak English?	男人: 是。你會說英文嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	女人: 不会。我不会说英文。
<b>Woman:</b> No. I can't speak English.	女人: 不會。我不會說英文。

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Say *English* in Mandarin.

Yīngwén

Now say *common language* meaning *Mandarin*.

pǔtōnghuà

Say *I can speak*.

Wǒ huì shuō.

Did you pronounce that as the speaker did?

Listen again.

Wǒ huì shuō.

Remember to be understood in Mandarin, it's important to pronounce each word with the correct intonation. Listen and repeat to practice your pronunciation.

Wǒ huì shuō.

Tell me that you can speak Mandarin.	Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.	
A little.	Yìdiǎnr.	
Now tell me that you can speak a little Mandarin.	Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	
Do you remember how to say <i>Excuse me. Please let me ask?</i>	Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.	03:00
Ask <i>Can you speak?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō ma?	
Ask me if I can speak Mandarin.	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
Did you pronounce that with the same tones as the speaker did? Listen and repeat.	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
Now ask <i>Can you speak English?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	
Answer <i>No</i> or literally, <i>Can't</i> .	Bú huì.	
Ask her if she can speak Mandarin.	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
How do you think she'll answer <i>Yes?</i>	Huì.	
In Mandarin the answers <i>yes</i> and <i>no</i> will change depending on the question. In this case <i>yes</i> means <i>can</i> . Ask again <i>Can you speak Mandarin?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
Answer <i>Yes</i> .	Huì.	
Ask her if she can speak English.	Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	
How does she answer <i>No?</i>	Bú huì.	
◀ Did you pronounce that with rising and falling tones? Try to say <i>I can't</i>	Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì.	
Say <i>I can't speak English</i> .	Wǒ bú huì Yīngwén.	06:00
<i>Now say I can't speak Mandarin</i> .	Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.	
And how would you say <i>I can speak a little?</i>	Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.	
<i>I can speak English</i> .	Wǒ huì shuō Yīngwén.	
<i>I can speak a little English</i> .	Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Yīngwén.	
What's the Chinese word for <i>you?</i>	nǐ	

▶ That word is pronounced with a tone that first falls then rises.

Say again *you*. nǐ

Say *You are*. Nǐ shì.

▶ Notice the falling/rising, falling tones.

Say *You are American*. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén.

Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask*. Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

Ask *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

How do you think you'd answer this question  
*Yes?*

Shì.

09:00

And now say *I am American*. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Ask her if she is American. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

How do you think she'd answer  
*No* to the question *Are you?*

Bú shì.

Now try to say *I am not American*. Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Say *I can't speak English*. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

Say again *I am not American*. Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Say *I can speak Mandarin*. Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Say *A little*. Yìdiǎnr.

Say *I can speak a little Mandarin*. Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

*I don't speak well.* First the word *well*. Listen and repeat.

1.	hǎo	好	好
----	-----	---	---

▶ The tone falls to the low level then begins to rise.

Say again *Well*. Hǎo.

*I don't speak well.* Listen and repeat. Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Say again *I don't speak well.* Or literally,  
*I speak not well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

12:00

2.	de	的	的
----	----	---	---

的(de) has no literal meaning in English, but in Mandarin, it is sometimes used in words describing an action such as speak well.

Listen and repeat again. Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

And now say *I can't speak Mandarin.* Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.  
 Say again *I don't speak well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.  
 Do you remember how to ask *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
 How would you say *Yes. I am American?* Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
 Now tell the woman *You are not American.* Nǐ bú shì Měiguó rén.  
 How does she ask *Can you speak Mandarin?* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?  
 Say *I can speak a little Mandarin.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.  
 Tell her *I don't speak well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

15:00

Do you remember how to say *Excuse me. Please let me ask?* Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.

That's if your question will begin the conversation. To ask a question politely of someone with whom you are already speaking, just say *Please let me ask.*

Say it. Qǐngwèn.

Now ask *Can you speak English?* Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

How would you answer this question *No?* Bú huì.

And now say *I am not American.* Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

*I can't speak English.* Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

And how would she say *I don't speak well?* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Here's how to say *Hello* in Chinese. Just listen.

3.	nǐ hǎo	你好	你好
----	--------	----	----

This means *You be well.*

Listen and repeat. Nǐ hǎo.

◀ This word for *you* is pronounced with a rising tone.<sup>1</sup>  
 Say *Hello.* Nǐ hǎo.

And do you remember how to say *You are American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén.

◀ In that, the word *you* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

<sup>1</sup> 你 (*you/nǐ*) is normally pronounced with a falling/rising tone, except when the two syllables with falling/rising tone (3<sup>rd</sup> tone) rule apply. See combination rule #3 in the pronunciation rules section of the Pinyin Romanization Chapter.

Now say again *Hello* or literally, *You well*. Nǐ hǎo.

What part of that means *good* or *well*? hǎo

18:00

Supposed you wanted to ask *How are you?* In Chinese, you literally, ask *You well?* Try it.

4.	Nǐ hǎo ma?	你好嗎?	你好嗎?
----	------------	------	------

This is only asked when you are inquiring about a person's state of being. It's not used as a greeting.

Ask again *How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Her answer is *Very well. Thanks. Just listen*. Hěn hǎo. Xièxie.

First, *Thanks*. Listen and repeat.

5.	xièxie	谢谢	謝謝
----	--------	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with two falling tones.<sup>2</sup>

Say *Thanks*. Xièxie.

Now ask *How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Listen and repeat. *Very well*. Hěn hǎo.

What's the Mandarin word *very*?

6.	hěn	很	很
----	-----	---	---

◀ Did you hear the rising tone?<sup>3</sup>

Say again *very*. hěn

Say *Very well*. Hěn hǎo.

Say *Very well. Thanks*. Hěn hǎo. Xièxie.

Now say *Hello* or *You are well*. Nǐ hǎo.

And do you remember how to ask  
*How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Because they are so similar, the expressions *Hello* and *How are you* are never used together.

21:00

Ask me again *How I am?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Remember this is only asked when you're sincerely interested in a person's well being. You would never ask this of someone you don't know well.

<sup>2</sup> 謝謝 (*thanks/xièxie*) is composed of two of the same characters, but second character is pronounced in the neutral tone. See combination rule #1 in the pronunciation rules section of the Pinyin Romanization Chapter.

<sup>3</sup> 很 (*very/hěn*) by itself is pronounced with a falling/rising tone. PMC wants to keep things simple, because *very* follows combination rule #3 when is followed by a character with a falling/rising tone (3<sup>rd</sup> tone).

How would you answer *Very well?* Hěn hǎo.  
*Very well. Thanks.* Hěn hǎo. Xièxie.

Here's how to say *goodbye* in Mandarin. Listen and repeat.

7.	zàijiàn	再见	再見
----	---------	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with two falling tones.  
 Say *Goodbye.* Zàijiàn.  
 And how do you say *Hello?* Nǐ hǎo.  
 Say again *Goodbye.* Zàijiàn.  
 Now ask *How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?  
*Very well. Thanks.* Hěn hǎo. Xièxie.  
 Say *Goodbye.* Zàijiàn.  
 Now say again *Hello.* Nǐ hǎo.  
 And now ask *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

24:00

Do you remember how you would answer this question *No?* Bú shì.  
 Now say *I am not American.* Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.  
 And how would you tell her *I can't speak Mandarin?* Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.  
 Say *Goodbye.* Zàijiàn.  
 Do you remember how to say *Excuse me. Please let me ask?* Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.  
 Ask her if she can speak English. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
 How would she answer this question *No?* Bú huì.  
 And how does she say *I am not American.* Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.  
 Say *I can speak a little Mandarin.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.  
 Now she asks *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
 How would you answer *No* to this question? Bú shì.  
 Now say *Yes. I am American.* Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

How would you ask her if she can speak English?

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

27:00

Answer this question *No*.

Bú huì.

Now say *No. I can't speak English.*

Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

She asks you if you can speak Mandarin.

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Tell her *Yes*.

Huì.

*I can speak a little.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

Add *I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Say *Goodbye*.

Zàijiàn.

Imagine that you've just met a Chinese woman. You're going to have a conversation with her. Answer her when she speaks with you, paying special attention to the words for *yes*.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	女人：你好。
<b>Woman:</b> Hello.	女人：你好。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Nǐ hǎo	你：你好。
<b>You:</b> Hello.	你：你好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人：你是美国人吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Are you American?	女人：你是美國人嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	你：是。我是美国人。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I am American.	你：是。我是美國人。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	女人：你会说普通话吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Can you speak Mandarin?	女人：你會說普通話嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Yìdiǎnr. Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	你：一点儿。我会说一点儿普通话。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I can speak a little Mandarin.	你：一點兒。我會說一點兒普通話。
<i>Say I don't speak well.</i>	你：Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Zàijiàn.	女人：再见。
<b>Woman:</b> Goodbye.	女人：再見。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Zàijiàn.	你：再见。
<b>You:</b> Goodbye.	你：再見。

You've just had your first conversation in Mandarin.

This is the end of unit 2.

30:00



## Unit 3

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	but	kěshì	可是	可是
2.	China	Zhōngguó	中国	中國
3.	(ne) how about...	ne	呢	呢

## II. Transcript

This is unit 3 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	女人: 你好。
<b>Woman:</b> Hello.	女人: 你好。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	男人: 你好。
<b>Man:</b> Hello.	男人: 你好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	女人: 你会说普通话吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Can you speak Mandarin?	女人: 你會說普通話嗎?
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr. Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	男人: 我会说一点儿。我说的不好。
<b>Man:</b> I can speak a little. I don't speak it well.	男人: 我會說一點兒。我說的不好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人: 你是美国人吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Are you American?	女人: 你是美國人嗎?
<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì.	男人: 是。
<b>Man:</b> Yes.	男人: 是。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Kěshì nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.	女人: 可是你普通话说说的很好。
<b>Woman:</b> But you speak Mandarin very well.	女人: 可是你普通話說的很好。

You just heard the woman say *But you speak Mandarin very well. But...*

1.	kěshì	可是	可是
----	-------	----	----

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Say Mandarin. Literally, common language.

Pǔtōnghuà

Say *I can speak Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Say *a little.*

yìdiǎnr

◆ Your tone should fall from the high level to the low level then begin to rise again.

Say again *a little.*

yìdiǎnr

Now say *I can speak a little.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

*I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Listen and repeat, trying to match the speaker's pronunciation.	Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.	
Ask <i>Can you speak English?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	
How would you answer this question <i>No?</i> ◀ Did you pronounce that with a rising then a falling tone?	Bú huì.	
Now say <i>I can't speak English.</i>	Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	03:00
And how would you say <i>I don't speak well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
Did you remember the 的(de)? Say again <i>I don't speak well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
How do you say <i>Excuse me?</i> ◀ The tone in that falls three times before rising in the end. <sup>1</sup>	Duìbuqǐ.	
Now say <i>Excuse me. Please let me ask.</i>	Duìbuqǐ. Qǐnqwèn.	
Ask me if I can speak Mandarin.	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
Say again <i>I don't speak well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
How would you ask a good friend <i>How are you?</i>	Nǐ hǎo ma?	
Do you remember what this means literally? It means <i>You well?</i> Now answer <i>Very well.</i>	Hěn hǎo.	
And now say <i>Thanks.</i> ◀ Did you pronounce that with two falling tones?	Xièxie.	
Literally, <i>Thanks you.</i> ◀ In that, the word for <i>you</i> is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.	Xièxie nǐ.	
Say again <i>Thank you.</i>	Xièxie nǐ.	
Now say <i>Hello</i> in Mandarin.	Nǐ hǎo.	
And how do you say <i>Goodbye?</i>	Zàijiàn.	06:00
◀ Did you pronounce that with two falling tones? Remember that in Mandarin, the tone in the word is an essential part in pronunciation.		
Say again <i>Goodbye.</i>	Zàijiàn.	

<sup>1</sup> The 不(nó/bù) has a neutral tone in this phrase.

Ask your friend again how he is. Nǐ hǎo ma?  
 Answer *Very well. Thank you.* Hěn hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.  
 How would you tell someone that you can't speak English? Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.  
 Ask *Can you speak Mandarin?* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?  
 How would you answer *Yes?* Huì.  
*I can speak a little Mandarin.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.  
 How would I tell you that *I don't speak well?* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.  
 Now ask me if I'm American. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
 Say again *American* or *America person* Měiguó rén  
 ◀ The tone first falls, then rises twice.  
 Ask me again if I'm American. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
 Answer *Yes.* Shì.

Did your pronunciation of 是(shì) match the speaker's?

09:00

Say it again Shì.  
*Yes. I am American.* Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
 Now say *I can speak a little English.* Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Yīngwén.  
 ◀ Did you pronounce the word for *I* with a falling/rising tone?  
 Now ask *can you speak Mandarin?* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?  
 Say *I don't speak well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.  
 Now say *I am American.* Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
 The woman says *I am Chinese.* Just listen. Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.

Listen and repeat *China.*

2.	Zhōngguó	中国	中國
----	----------	----	----

◀ The first part of that is pronounced with a high level tone which neither rises nor falls.  
 Say *China.* Zhōngguó.

Try to say *I am Chinese.* Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.

And now ask *Are you Chinese?* Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

12:00

How does she answer *Yes*? Shì.

Now ask me if I am Chinese. Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

How would I answer this question *No*? Bú shì.

How would I say *I am American*? Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

And now say *I am not Chinese*. Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

Now say *You are not Chinese*. Nǐ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

She says *I am not American*. Say it. Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Supposed you wanted to ask *How about you?*  
Listen and repeat.

Nǐ ne?

3.	ne	呢	呢
----	----	---	---

That's literally, *You, how about?* Now say  
*How about?*

Ne?

◀ 呢(ne) is pronounced with a high level tone, but it's very soft<sup>2</sup>.

Ask again *How about you?* Nǐ ne?

And now ask *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

15:00

The yes/no question word is pronounced with the same soft high level tone<sup>3</sup>.

Ask me again if I'm American. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Answer *Yes*. Shì.

*I am American. How about you?* Wǒ shì Měiguó rén. Nǐ ne?

And now say *You're not American*. Nǐ bú shì Měiguó rén.

How would you say *I'm not Chinese?* Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

Now you want to say *But I can speak Mandarin*.  
First, here's how to say *but*.

kěshì

◀ This is pronounced with falling/rising and falling tones.

Say *but*. kěshì

Say *But I can speak*. Kěshì wǒ huì shuō.

<sup>2</sup> 呢(ne) has a neutral tone.

<sup>3</sup> 吗 (ma) also has a neutral tone.

Say *But I can speak Mandarin.*

Kěshì wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

*I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Ask *How about you?*

Nǐ ne?

---

18:00

How does she ask *Are you Chinese?*

Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

Answer *No. I am American.*

Bú shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Ask *Can you speak Mandarin?*

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

How would you answer *Yes?*

Huì.

Now say *I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

*I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Say *Goodbye.*

Zàijiàn.

How do you say *Excuse me?*

Duìbuqǐ.

Now say *Please let me ask.*

Qǐnqwèn.

*Excuse me. Please let me ask.*

Duìbuqǐ. Qǐnqwèn.

Say *You are.*

Nǐ shì.

Say *I am.*

Wǒ shì.

*I am American.*

Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Say *I can't speak.*

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

---

21:00

*I can't speak Mandarin*

Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

How does she say *I am not American?*

Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Say *You can't speak English.*

Nǐ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

Say *You are not Chinese.*

Nǐ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

Now say *I am American. What about you?*

Wǒ shì Měiguó rén. Nǐ ne?

Ask *Are you Chinese?*

Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

Answer this question *Yes. I am Chinese.*

Shì. Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.

Do you remember how to ask a good friend  
*How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

How would your friend answer  
*Very well. Thank you.* Hěn hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.

Suppose you've just met someone, how would you say  
*Excuse me. Please let me ask.* Duìbuqǐ. Qǐnqwèn.

24:00

Now ask *Can you speak Mandarin?* Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

How would you answer *No?* Bú huì.

Say *I don't speak well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Ask *Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

How would answer *Yes.* Shì.

Say *But I can speak a little Mandarin.* Kěshì wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Now say *I don't speak well.* Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

She says *I can't speak English.* Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

Imagine that you're out walking in Beijing and you recognize a woman who works in your hotel.  
Say *Hello.* Nǚ: Nǐ hǎo.  
Nǚrén: Nǐ hǎo.

27:00

Now say *Excuse me. Please let me ask.* Nǚ: Duìbuqǐ. Qǐnqwèn.

Ask her if she can speak English. Nǚ: Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
Nǚrén: Bú huì.

How does she tell you that she can't speak English? Nǚrén: Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén.

How does she say *I am Chinese?* Nǚrén: Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.

Now she is going to ask you a question which you are to answer.

Nǚrén: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人: 你是美国人吗?
Woman: Are you American?	女人: 你是美國人嗎?
Nǚ: Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	男人: 是。我是美国人。
You: Yes. I am American.	男人: 是。我是美国人。

And now say *But I can speak Mandarin.* Nǚ: Kěshì wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

You'd better say *I can speak a little* Nǚ: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

Maybe you'd better say *I don't speak well.*

Nǚ: Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Listen to her reaction.

---

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

女人: 你普通話說的很好。

**Woman:** You speak Mandarin very well.

女人: 你普通話說的很好。

---

She just said you speak Mandarin very well.  
Thank her.

Nǚ: Xièxie nǚ.

Tell her *Goodbye.*

Nǚ: Zàijiàn.

**Nǚrén:** Zàijiàn.

This is the end of unit 3.

---

30:00

## Unit 4

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	understand, to (the situation)	míngbai	明白	明白
2.	what	shénme	什么	什麼
3.	college	Xuéyuàn	学院	學院
4.	road	lù	路	路
5.	where	nǎr	哪儿	哪兒
6.	located	zài	在	在
7.	street	jiē	街	街
8.	Long Peace Street	Cháng Ān Jiē	长安街	長安街
9.	here	zhèr	这儿	這兒
10.	there	nàr	那儿	那兒

## II. Transcript

This is unit 4 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Dùi buqǐ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?	男人：对不起。请问，你是中国人吗？
<b>Man:</b> Excuse me. Please let me ask, are you Chinese?	男人：對不起。請問，你是中國人嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì zhōngguó rén. Nǐ ne?	女人：是。我是中国人。你呢？
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. I am Chinese. And you?	女人：是。我是中國人。你呢？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	男人：我是美国人。
<b>Man:</b> I am American.	男人：我是美國人。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Kěshì nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.	女人：可是你会说普通话。
<b>Woman:</b> But you speak Mandarin.	女人：可是你會說普通話。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr. Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	男人：我会说一点儿。我说的不好。
<b>Man:</b> I can speak a little. I don't speak well.	男人：我會說一點兒。我說的不好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.	女人：你普通话说说的很好。
<b>Woman:</b> You speak Mandarin very well.	女人：你普通話說的很好。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Xièxie nǐ.	男人：谢谢你。
<b>Man:</b> Thank you.	男人：謝謝你。

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember how to say *Hello*?

Nǐ hǎo.



◀ The tones in *Hello* rise, fall and begin to fall again.<sup>1</sup>

Say again *Hello*. Nǐ hǎo.

Now say *Goodbye*. Zàijiàn.

◀ Remember the two falling tones.

How would you ask a good friend  
*How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Say *Very well*. Hěn hǎo.

*Thank you*. Xièxie nǐ.

Ask your friend again *How are you?* Nǐ hǎo ma?

Try to say *Not very well*.  
Literally, *Am not very well*. Bú shì hěn hǎo.

Now say *I can't speak Mandarin*. Wǒ bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

And how do you say *I don't speak well*. Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

Do you remember how to ask someone  
*Are you American?* Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

03:00

How would you answer this question *Yes?* Shì.

Ask the woman if she is American. Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Now say to her *You are not American*. Nǐ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Say *I'm American. How about you?* Wǒ shì Měiguó rén. Nǐ ne?

Now say *I'm not American*. Wǒ bú shì Měiguó rén.

How does she say *You are not Chinese?* Nǐ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

Ask her if she is Chinese. Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

How does she answer *Yes?* Shì.

Ask her if she can speak English. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwèn ma?

How would she answer *No*. Bú huì.

<sup>1</sup> 你好(*hello/nǐ hǎo*) follows combination rule #3 when a character with a falling/rising tone (3<sup>rd</sup> tone) is followed by another character with a falling/rising tone (3<sup>rd</sup> tone). Note however, that the tones do not change when writing in Pinyin.

And how does she tell you that she can't speak English?

Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwèn.

Ask how about you?

Nǐ ne?

Tell her *I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Here's how to say *you understand.*

06:00

Listen and repeat.

Nǐ míngbai.

1.	míngbai	明白	明白
----	---------	----	----

◆ Míngbai is pronounced with two rising tones.<sup>2</sup>

Say *You understand.*

Nǐ míngbai.

In Chinese, understand the situation or understand what's happening. It's not used to say understand the language.

Say *You can speak Mandarin.*

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Now say *I understand.*

Wǒ míngbai.

And how do you think you would say *I don't understand?*

Wǒ bù míngbai.

Say *I can speak a little.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

*But.*

kěshì.

*I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

She said *You speak Mandarin very well.*

Listen and repeat.

Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

09:00

Notice the word order. Say *You speak Mandarin very well.*

Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

Remember to use 的(de) to say speak very well.

Say again *You speak Mandarin very well.*

Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

Tell her you don't understand.

Wǒ bù míngbai.

However in most cases, it's better to say *I don't understand what you're saying.*

Here's how to say *what.*

2.	shénme	什么	什麼
----	--------	----	----

◆ The tone first rises then falls.<sup>3</sup>

Say *What.*

Shénme.

<sup>2</sup>明白 (*to understand/míngbai*) is pronounced with a rising tone followed by a neutral tone.

PMC keeps it simple by saying that is has two rising tones instead.

<sup>3</sup> 什么 (*what/shénme*) is pronounced with a rising tone followed by a neutral tone.

And now say *I don't understand.*

Wǒ bù míngbai.

*I don't understand what you're saying. Or literally I don't understand you speak what.*  
Try it.

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwèn ma?

Say *I can speak a little.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

Ask *What about you?*

Nǐ ne?

Do you remember how to say  
*I don't speak well?*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

12:00

Say *I don't understand what you're saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Tell her *I'm not Chinese.*

Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

What's the Mandarin word *but*?

kěshì

Say *But I can speak Mandarin.*

Kěshì wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

*I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Now say *I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

She says *You are not Chinese.*

Nǐ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

*But.*

Kěshì.

She tells you  
*But you speak Mandarin very well.*

Kěshì nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

Say *Thank you.*

Xièxie nǐ.

Let's learn how to ask for direction. We'll start by asking the way to *College Road*.  
Just listen. Don't repeat.

Dùibuqǐ. Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

Listen and repeat the street's name.

3.	Xuéyuàn	学院	學院
----	---------	----	----

◀ The tone first rises then falls.

15:00

Say the name again.

Xuéyuàn

◀ Here's the word for *road*. Which is pronounced with a high falling tone. Listen and repeat.

4.	lù	路	路
----	----	---	---

Say again *road*.

lù

Now try to say *College Road*.

Xuéyuàn Lù

Here's how to ask where the road is. First, the word for *where*. Listen and repeat.

5.	nǎr	哪儿	哪兒
----	-----	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Say again *where*. nǎr

Now you want to ask *where is College Road*. In Chinese, you literally ask *College road located where?* Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

What part of that means *located*?

6.	zài	在	在
----	-----	---	---

◀ 在(zài) is pronounced with a falling tone. It's not a yes/no question, so you don't need 吗 (ma). Zài nǎr?

Now ask where College Road is located. Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?  
Remember the word order.

Here is the Mandarin word for *street*. Listen and repeat.

7.	jiē	街	街
----	-----	---	---

◀ This word is pronounced with a high level tone.

Say again *street*. jiē

Here's the name *Long Peace Street*. Listen and repeat.

18:00

8.	Cháng Ān Jiē	長安街	长安街
----	--------------	-----	-----

◀ That's pronounced with a rising tone, followed by a high level tone.

Say again *Long Peace Street*. Cháng Ān Jiē.

Try to ask where this street is located. Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

The answer is *here*. Listen and repeat *here*.

9.	zhèr	这儿	這兒
----	------	----	----

◀ Say *here* with a high falling tone. zhèr

Try to answer *Here* or *Located here*. Zài zhèr.

Ask where Long Peace Street is located. Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

Do you remember how to say *College Road*? Xuéyuàn Lù.

Ask where is College Road located. Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

How would you answer *Located here*? Zài zhèr.

Do you remember how to say *what*? shénme

Tell her you don't understand what she is saying. Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

You want to ask *Is it located here?*

21:00

Listen and repeat.

Shì zài zhèr ma?

Because you're asking is it, rather than where is, use 是(shì).

Ask again *Is it located here?*

Shì zài zhèr ma?

Try to answer *Yes. It is located here.*

Shì. Shì zài zhèr.

Now try to say *No. It's not located here.*

Bú shì. Bú shì zài zhèr.

Tell the woman

*I don't understand what you are saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

She says *It's located over there.*

Shì zài nàr.

Listen and repeat.

10.	nàr	那儿	那兒
-----	-----	----	----

◀ nàr (那儿) is pronounced with a falling tone.

Say it again.

nàr

Now ask *Where is College Road located?*

Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

◀ Did you remember the falling/rising tone in the word *where?*

Listen and repeat *Where? Over there.*

Nǎr? Nàr.

How would she answer *Not over there.*

Literally, *Not located over there.*

Bú zài nàr.

24:00

And now ask again *Is it located here?*

Shì zài zhèr me?

Say *Long Peace St. is located here.*

Cháng Ān Jiē zài zhèr.

Ask where College Road is located.

Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

Answer *Not here.*

Bú zài zhèr.

Answer *Over there.*

Bú zài zhèr. Zài nàr.

Tell her that

*You don't understand what she is saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Say *Goodbye* to her.

Zàijiàn.

Let's try a Mandarin conversation. The woman will say things to which you are to respond. When the answer isn't clear, I'll help. Let's begin.

Nǚrén: Nǐ hǎo.	女人: 你好。
Woman: Hello.	女人: 你好。
Nánrén: Nǐ hǎo.	男人: 你好。
Man: Hello.	男人: 你好。
Nǚrén: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	女人: 你是美国人吗?
Woman: Are you American?	女人: 你是美國人嗎?

<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	男人：是。我是美国人。
<b>Man:</b> Yes. I am American.	男人：是。我是美國人。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén. Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	女人：我是中国人。你会说普通话吗？
<b>Woman:</b> I am Chinese. Can you speak Mandarin?	女人：我是中國人。你會說普通話嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Yìdiǎnr. Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà?	男人：一点儿。我会说一点儿普通话。
<b>Man:</b> Yes. I can speak a little Mandarin.	男人：一點兒。我會說一點兒普通話。

Say *I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr pǔtōnghuà.

Tell her you don't speak well.

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

27:00

And how would she say you speak Mandarin very well?

Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

Say *Thank you.*

Xièxie nǐ.

Now she'll ask you for some directions.

<b>Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn, Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?</b>	对不起。请问，学院路在哪儿？
Excuse me. Please let me ask, where is College Road located?	對不起。請問，學院路在哪兒？

How does she ask *Is it located here?*

Shì zài zhèr ma?

Tell her that *Yes. It is located here.*

Shì. Shì zài zhèr.

How does she ask *Where is Long Peace St. located?*

Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

Tell her Located over there.

Zài nàr.

Tell her that College Road is not located over there.

Xuéyuàn Lù bú zài nàr.

Tell her that Long Peace Street is located over there.

Cháng Ān Jiē zài nàr.

Say But College Road is located here.

Kěshì Xuéyuàn Lù zài zhèr.

Now she'll say something. If you don't understand what she is saying, tell her so.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī. Nǐ ne?	女人：我想买一点儿东西。你呢？
<b>Woman:</b> I would like to buy something. How about you?	女人：我想買一點兒東西。你呢？
<b>You:</b> Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.	你：我不明白你说什么。
<b>You:</b> I don't understand what you are saying.	你：我不明白你說什麼。

Say *Goodbye* to her.

Zàijiàn.

This is the end of unit 4.

---

30:00

## Unit 5

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Traditional	Simplified
1.	know, to	zhīdao	知道	知道
2.	would like/miss, to	xiǎng	想	想
3.	eat, to	chī	吃	吃
4.	something	yìdiǎnr dōngxi	一点儿东西	一點兒東西
5.	thing/anything	dōngxi	东西	東西
6.	drink, to	hē	喝	喝

## II. Transcript

This is unit 5 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn, Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?	男人：对不起。请问，学院路在哪儿？
<b>Man:</b> Excuse me. Please let me ask, where is College Road?	男人：對不起。請問，學院路在哪兒？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Zài nàr.	女人：在那儿。
<b>Woman:</b> It's over there.	女人：在那兒。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Cháng Ān Jiē ne? Shì zài zhèr ma?	男人：长安街呢？在这儿吗？
<b>Man:</b> Where is Long Peace Street? Is it over here?	男人：長安街呢？在這兒嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shì. Shì zài zhèr.	女人：是。是在这儿。
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. It's over here.	女人：是。是在這兒。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	男人：你会说英文吗？
<b>Man:</b> Can you speak English?	男人：你會說英文嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú huì. Wǒ bú huì shuō Yīngwén. Zàijiàn.	女人：不会。我不会说英文。再见。
<b>Woman:</b> I can't. I can't speak English. Goodbye.	女人：不會。我不會說英文。再見。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Zàijiàn.	男人：再见。
<b>Man:</b> Goodbye.	男人：再見。

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

How do you say *Hello* in Mandarin?

Nǐ hǎo.

Ask *Can you speak English?*

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

How would she say *I don't understand?*

Wǒ bù míngbai.

What's the Mandarin word *What?*

Shénme.



Say <i>I don't understand what you're saying.</i>	Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.	
Ask again <i>Can you speak English?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	
Now she answers <i>Yes. I can speak a little.</i>	Huì. Wǒ huì shuō yidianr.	
How would you say <i>I don't speak well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
Now ask <i>How about you?</i>	Nǐ ne?	
<i>Can you speak Mandarin?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	
		03:00
Answer <i>Yes. I can speak Mandarin.</i>	Huì. Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.	
How does she say <i>You speak Mandarin very well?</i>	Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.	
Did you remember the word order? Now say <i>I don't speak well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
Say <i>I am not Chinese.</i>	Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.	
<i>I don't speak Mandarin well.</i>	Wǒ pǔtōnghuà shuō de bù hǎo.	
Do you remember how to ask a good friend <i>How are you?</i>	Nǐ hǎo ma?	
Answer <i>Very well. Thank you.</i>	Hěn hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.	
She asks <i>How about you?</i>	Nǐ ne?	
Now answer <i>Not very well</i> or <i>Am not very well.</i>	Bú shì hěn hǎo.	
Do you remember how to say <i>Long Peace Street</i> in Mandarin?	Cháng Ān Jiē	
		06:00
And now say <i>College Road.</i>	Xuéyuàn Lù.	
Ask <i>Where is</i> or <i>Located where?</i>	Zài nǎr?	
Ask where <i>College Road</i> is located.	Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?	
Say <i>Excuse me. Please let me ask.</i>	Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.	
<i>Please let me ask, where is Long Peace Street located?</i>	Qǐngwèn, Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?	
Answer <i>Here. Literally, Located here.</i>	Zài zhèr.	
And now say <i>Long Peace Street is located here.</i>	Cháng Ān Jiē zài zhèr.	

And how would you ask *Is it located here?* Shì zài zhèr ma?

How would she tell you  
*No. It's located over there?* Bú shì. Shì zài nàr.

And how would you say  
*It is not located over there.* Bú shì zài nàr.

She says *But it is not located here.* Kěshì bú shì zài zhèr.

Now say *Long Peace Street isn't located here.* Cháng Ān Jiē bú zài zhèr.

09:00

Say *But College Road is located here.* Kěshì Xuéyuàn Lù zài zhèr.

Tell her you don't understand what she is saying. Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

*Please let me ask, where is Long Peace Street located?* Qǐngwèn, Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

Listen to the answer *I don't know.* Wǒ bù zhīdao.

1.	zhīdao	知道	知道
----	--------	----	----

Repeat after the speaker. Wǒ bù zhīdao.

What part of that means *know?* zhīdao

◀ This is pronounced with a high level, followed by a falling tone.<sup>1</sup>  
Try to say *I know.* Wǒ zhīdao.

And now say *I don't know.* Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Ask me where Long Peace Street is located. Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

Answer *I don't know.* Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Say *But I know.* Kěshì wǒ zhīdao.

Ask again *Please let me ask, where is Long Peace Street located?* Qǐngwèn, Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

How would she answer *Located over there?* Zài nàr.

*Where? Over there.* Nǎr? Nàr.

12:00

Try to say *You know.* Nǐ zhīdao.

Try to ask *Do you know?* Nǐ zhīdao ma?

<sup>1</sup> 知道 (*to know/zhīdao*) is pronounced with a high level tone followed by a natural tone.

How does she answer *Yes. I know?* Zhīdao. Wǒ zhīdao.

*It is not located over there.* Bú shì zài nàr.

Let's learn how to ask for things in Mandarin. First, here's how to say *I would like*.

Listen and repeat. Wǒ xiǎng.

2.	xiǎng	想	想
----	-------	---	---

◀ *Would like* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Say again *I would like.* Wǒ xiǎng.

Now try to say *You would like.* Nǐ xiǎng.

Say again *I would like.* Wǒ xiǎng.

Say *I know.* Wǒ zhīdao.

Try to ask *Do you know?* Nǐ zhīdao ma?

How would you answer this question *Yes?* Zhīdao.

Now answer *No.* Bù zhīdao.

And now say *I don't know.* Wǒ bù zhīdao.

15:00

Now try to say *I would not like to.* Wǒ bù xiǎng.  
Meaning *I don't want to.*

Did your tone match the speaker's?  
Say again *I would not like to.* Wǒ bù xiǎng.

Say *I don't understand what you're saying.* Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Here's how to ask *Would you like to eat something?*

Just listen. Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

3.	chī	吃	吃
----	-----	---	---

◀ *To eat* is pronounced with a high level tone.

Listen and repeat. chī

Did you pronounce the end of that word just like the speaker did?  
Say again *to eat.* chī

Try to say *I would like to eat.* Wǒ xiǎng chī.

Listen and repeat *something.*

4.	dōngxi yìdiǎnr	一点儿东西	一點兒東西
----	----------------	-------	-------

That's literally, a *little thing*. Try to say *thing*.

5.	dōngxī	东西	東西
<p>◀ This is pronounced with two high level tones.<sup>2</sup> Although the second is pronounced more softly. Now say <i>a little thing or something</i>. yìdiǎnr dōngxī</p> <p>Try to say <i>to eat something</i>. Chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī. chī, xī</p> <p>The word to eat is similar to the end of the word <i>thing</i>. Listen and repeat to compare the sounds chī, xī.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">18:00</p> <p>Say <i>You would like to eat something</i>. Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.</p> <p>Now try to ask <i>Would you like to eat something?</i> Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?</p> <p>How would you answer this question <i>Yes?</i> Xiǎng.</p> <p><i>I would like to eat</i>. Wǒ xiǎng chī.</p> <p>Now answer <i>Yes. I would like to eat something</i>. Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.</p> <p>Do you remember how to say <i>Hello?</i> Nǐ hǎo.</p> <p>Ask her if she would like to eat something? Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?</p> <p>Answer this question <i>No. Thank you</i>. Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.</p> <p>She says <i>But I would like to drink something</i>. Just listen. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.</p>			

6.	hē	喝	喝
<p>◀ Listen and repeat. <i>To drink</i>. This word has a high level tone hē</p> <p>Say again <i>to drink</i>. hē</p> <p>Say I would like to drink something. Wǒ xiǎng yìdiǎnr dōngxī.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">21:00</p> <p>Now ask her <i>Would you like to drink something?</i> Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?</p> <p>How does she say <i>I don't know?</i> Wǒ bù zhīdao.</p> <p>Say <i>I would like to eat something</i>. Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.</p> <p>Ask her again if would she like to drink Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?</p>			

<sup>2</sup> 东西 (*thing/dōngxī*) is pronounced with a high level tone followed by a natural tone. 西 (*west/xī*) by itself, is pronounced with a high level tone.

something.

How would she answer this question  
*No. Thank you?*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.

Now she says  
*But I would like to eat something.*

Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Ask *Would you like to drink something?*

Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

Answer *No. Thank you. But I would like to eat something.*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Now say *Hello.*

Nǐ hǎo.

Ask a woman if she can speak English.

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

24:00

How does she answer *No?*

Bú huì.

How does she say *I am Chinese.*

Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.

Say *I am not Chinese.*

Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.

*But I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Kěshì wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

Tell her *I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

How would she say  
*You speak Mandarin very well.*

Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.

Thank her.

Xièxie nǐ.

Now say *Long Peace Street.*

Cháng Ān Jiē

Ask where Long Peace Street is.

Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

*Is it located here?*

Shì zài zhèr ma?

How does she say *It's not located here. It's located over there.*

Bú shì zài zhèr. Shì zài nàr.

27:00

Ask her where College Road is located.

Xuéyuàn Lù zài nǎr?

Do you remember how to ask *Do you know?*

Nǐ zhīdao ma?

How does she answer *No. I don't know.*

Bù zhīdao. Wǒ bù zhīdao.

She corrects herself and says *Yes. I know.* How would she say this?

Zhīdao. Wǒ zhīdao.

Now she tells you that she would like to eat something.

Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Ask her if should like to drink something.

Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

How does she answer *No. Thank you?*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.

How does she add  
*But I would like to eat something?*

Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Say *But I would not like to eat.*

Kěshì wǒ bú xiǎng chī.

Say *Goodbye* to her.

Nǚ: Zàijiàn.  
Nǚrén: Zàijiàn.

This is the end of unit 5.

---

30:00

## Unit 6

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	go, to	qù	去	去
2.	place	nàr	那儿	那兒
3.	also/too	yě	也	也
4.	when	shénme shíhou	什么时候	什麼時候
5.	now	xiànzài	现在	現在
6.	later	guò yíhuǐr	过一会儿	過一會兒

## II. Transcript

This is unit 6 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation. In it, you'll hear the word 也(yě). This means *also*. Listen.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	男人: 你好。
<b>Man:</b> Hello.	男人: 你好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	女人: 你好。
<b>Woman:</b> Hello.	女人: 你好。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi. Nǐ ne?	男人: 我想吃一点儿东西。你呢?
<b>Man:</b> I would like to eat something. How about you?	男人: 我想吃一點兒東西。你呢?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ yě xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	女人: 我也想吃一点儿东西。
<b>Woman:</b> I also want to eat something.	女人: 我也想吃一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	男人: 你想喝一点儿東西嗎?
<b>Man:</b> Would you like to drink something?	男人: 你想喝一點兒東西嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	女人: 想。我想喝一点儿东西。
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. I would like to drink something.	女人: 想。我想喝一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Qù nǎr hē?	男人: 去哪儿喝?
<b>Man:</b> Where to go to drink?	男人: 去哪兒喝?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Qù Cháng Ān Jiē.	女人: 去长安街。
<b>Woman:</b> To Long Peace Street.	女人: 去長安街。

You just heard the man ask  
*Where to go to drink?*

Qù nǎr hē?

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember the word for *street* in  
Mandarin?

jiē

Now say <i>Long Peace Street</i> .	Cháng Ān Jiē.	
Say <i>Excuse me. Please let me ask</i> .	Duìbuqǐ. Qǐngwèn.	
Now ask where the street is located.	Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?	
Answer <i>Here</i> or <i>Located here</i> .	Zài zhèr.	
Tell her that Long Peace Street isn't located over there.	Cháng Ān Jiē bú zài nàr.	
Do you remember how to ask <i>How about you?</i>	Nǐ ne?	
Now try to ask <i>How about College Road?</i>	Xuéyuàn Lù ne?	
Say <i>Located over there</i> .	Zài nàr.	
Ask <i>Is it here?</i>	Shì zài zhèr ma?	03:00
Answer <i>No. It's not located here</i> .	Bú shì. Bú shì zài zhèr.	
Tell her that College Road is located over there.	Xuéyuàn Lù zài nàr.	
Now say <i>You speak</i> .	Nǐ shuō.	
<i>You speak very well</i> .	Nǐ shuō de hěn hǎo.	
Did you use 的(de)? Now say <i>You speak Mandarin very well</i> .	Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.	
Do you remember how to say <i>I understand?</i>	Wǒ míngbai.	
Now tell her that you don't understand what she is saying.	Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.	
How do you say <i>I can speak a little</i> .	Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.	
Say <i>I don't speak well</i> or <i>I speak not well</i> .	Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.	
Now say <i>You would like</i> .	Nǐ xiǎng.	
Say <i>Something</i> in Mandarin.	Yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Ask her if she would like to eat something.	Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	06:00
Answer <i>Yes. I would like to eat something</i> .	Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Ask her if she would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	
Answer this question in the affirmative.	Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	



Now answer *No. Thank you.*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.

Ask her if she would like to eat something.

Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

Answer *Yes. I would like to eat something.*

Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Now answer *No. Thank you.*  
*But I would like to drink something.*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Say *I don't understand what you're saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

And now say *I don't speak well.*

Wǒ shuō de bù hǎo.

09:00

Ask again where Long Peace Street is located.

Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?

Ask *Do you know?*

Nǐ zhīdao ma?

Answer *No. I don't know.*

Bù zhīdao. Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Now say *Not here* or *Not located here.*

Bú zài zhèr.

Now say *Not over there.*

Bú zài nàr.

Once again ask her if she would like to eat something.

Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

Say *Yes. I would like to eat something.*

Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Do you remember how to ask *Located where?*

Zài nǎr?

You want to ask *Where do you want to eat?*  
Just Listen.

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

1.	qù	去	去
----	----	---	---

With this question, you literally ask *You would like to go where to eat?*

Listen and repeat *to go.*

qù

◀ This word is pronounced with a falling tone.  
Say *to go.*

qù

Now try to ask *To go where?*

Qù nǎr?

Try to ask *Where would you like to go to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

12:00

Here's the answer *My place.* Just Listen.

Wǒ nàr.

2.	nàr	那儿	那儿
----	-----	----	----

*I could also mean my.*

Now listen and repeat *My place.*

Wǒ nàr.

◀ The tone falls, rises and falls again.  
Say *My place* or literally, *My over there*.

Wǒ nàr.

Ask me where would I like to go to eat.

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Say *My place*.

Wǒ nàr.

Now try to say *To my place* or *To go my place*.

Qù wǒ nàr.

Say *I would like to go to my place to eat*.

Wǒ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr chī.

Ask *Where would you like to go to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Say again *To my place*.

Qù wǒ nàr.

How do you think you'd say *Your place?*

Nǐ nàr.

Try to say  
*I would like to go to your place to eat*.

Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr chī.

15:00

Now listen and repeat the man's answer.  
*I too would like to*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

What part of that means *too* or *also*?

3.	yě	也	也
----	----	---	---

◀ This word is pronounced with a rising/falling tone.

Try to say *I too would like to*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

Ask again *Where would you like to go to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Try to ask

*Would you like to go to my place to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr chī ma?

Now answer

*Yes. I would like to go to your place to eat*.

Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr chī.

Say *I too would like to*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

Now listen and repeat the question *When*.

4.	shénme shíhou	什么时候	什麼時候
----	---------------	------	------

◀ The tones rise, fall and then rise and falls again.<sup>1</sup>

Ask *When* or literally, *What is the time?*

Shénme shíhou?

Say *I don't know*.

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Here's the answer *Now*. Listen and repeat.

5.	xiànzài	现在	現在
----	---------	----	----

<sup>1</sup> 什么时候 (*when/shénme shíhou*) is pronounced with a rising/neutral tone, followed by another rising/neutral tone.

◀ That is pronounced with two falling tones.  
Say again *Now*.

Xiànzài.

How would you ask her  
*Where would you like to go to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

18:00

And now ask again *When?*

Shénme shíhou?

Try to ask *When would you like to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?

Answer *Now*.

Xiànzài.

Say *I too would like to*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

Ask again *When would you like to eat?*

Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?

Say *I don't know*.

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Try to say *I would not like to eat now* or  
literally, *I not would like now to eat*.

Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài chī.

Here's the answer *later*. Listen and repeat.

6. guò yìhuǐr

过一会儿

過一會兒

◀ The tones fall, fall and then fall and rise.  
Say *Later*.

Guò yìhuǐr.

Ask *Would you like to drink something?*

Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Answer this question *No. Thank you*.

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.

21:00

Say *But I would like to eat something*.

Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Try to say *I too would like to eat something*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

And now just say *I too would like to*.

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

Do you remember the Mandarin word *to go*?

qù

Ask him where he would like to go to eat.

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

How does he say  
*I would like to go to your place to eat*.

Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr chī.

Ask *When would you like to drink something?*

Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

Try to say *I would not like to drink now*.

Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài hē.

Say *Later*.

Guò yìhuǐr.

Do you remember how to ask the question  
*Located where?*

Zài nàr?

24:00

Now ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?
Ask the young woman when she would like to eat.	Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?
How would she answer <i>I would not like to eat now.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài chī.
Now say <i>Later.</i>	Guò yìhuǐr.
Ask her where she would like to go to eat.	Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?
Do you remember how to say <i>My place?</i>	Wǒ nàr.
Now say <i>I would like to go to my place to eat.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr chī.
Say <i>I would not like to drink here.</i> Say <i>Located here.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng zài zhèr hē.
Say <i>Your place.</i>	Nǐ nàr.
How did she say <i>I would not like to go to your place to eat.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng qù nǐ nàr chī.
Now she says <i>But I would like to drink something.</i>	Kěshì wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.
What Mandarin word means <i>also</i> or <i>too</i> ?	yě
Say <i>I too would like to drink something.</i>	Wǒ yě xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.
Ask him when he would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī?
Try to ask <i>Would you like to drink later?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng guò yìhuǐr hē ma?
Answer <i>No. I would like to drink now.</i>	Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài hē.
Try to ask <i>Would you like to go to my place to drink something?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?
How does she answer <i>Yes?</i>	Xiǎng.
Tell her <i>I would like to eat something later.</i> <i>But I would like to drink something now.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng guò yìhuǐr chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng xiànzài hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.
This is the end of unit 6.	

30:00

## Unit 7

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	café	kāfēitīng	咖啡厅	咖啡廳
2.	restaurant	fàndiàn	饭店	飯店
3.	tea	chá	茶	茶
4.	beer	píjiǔ	啤酒	啤酒
5.	Beijing	Běijīng	北京	北京

## II. Transcript

This is unit 7 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī? Xiànzài ma?	男人：你想什么时候吃？现在吗？
<b>Man:</b> When would you like to eat? Right now?	男人：你想什麼時候吃？現在嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ xiǎng guò yíhuǐr chī. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng xiànzài hē yídiǎnr dōngxī.	女人：我想过一会儿吃。可是我想现在喝一点儿东西。
<b>Woman:</b> I would like to eat later. But I would like to drink now.	女人：我想過一會兒吃。可是我想現在喝一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr hē?	男人：你想去哪儿喝？
<b>Man:</b> Where would you like to drink?	男人：你想去哪兒喝？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao.	女人：我不知道。
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know.	女人：我不知道。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr hē ma?	男人：你想去我那儿喝吗？
<b>Man:</b> Would you like to go to my place?	男人：你想去我那兒喝嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ xiǎng qù kāfēi tīng hē.	女人：我想去咖啡厅喝。
<b>Woman:</b> I would like to go to the café to drink.	女人：我想去咖啡廳喝。

You just heard Qù kāfēitīng or to *Go to a café.*

*café*

1.	kāfēitīng	咖啡厅	咖啡廳
----	-----------	-----	-----

Listen again. (the conversation above is repeated)

Ask Where would you like to go to eat?

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Do you remember how to say *To my place?*

Qù wǒ nàr.

And how would you say

*I would not like to go to your place?*

Wǒ bù xiǎng qù nǐ nàr.

Tell me that you would like to eat something.

Wǒ xiǎng chī yídiǎnr dōngxī.

Do you remember how to say <i>I too would like to?</i>	Wǒ yě xiǎng.	
Ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?	
Ask <i>When would you like to eat?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?	
Say <i>Now.</i>	Xiànzài.	
Try to say <i>I would like to eat now.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī.	03:00
Ask me if I would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	
Answer this question <i>Yes.</i>	Xiǎng.	
Ask again <i>Would you like to drink something?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	
Now answer <i>No. Thank you.</i>	Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.	
Say <i>But I would like to eat something.</i>	Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	
Listen and repeat to practice the pronunciation.	Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	
Now say <i>I too would like to.</i>	Wǒ yě xiǎng.	
Ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?	
Say <i>Later.</i>	Guò yìhuǐr.	
What word means <i>to go</i> ?	qù	
Ask <i>Where would you like to go to eat?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?	
Try to say <i>I would not like to eat here.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng zài zhèr chī.	06:00
Ask again <i>Where would you like to go to eat?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?	
Ask <i>Would you like to eat over there?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng zài nàr chī ma?	
Say <i>I would not like to eat over there.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng zài nàr chī.	
Say <i>I would like to go to your place.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr.	
She answers <i>OK. It's the same as the word for good or well. Try it.</i>	Hǎo.	
◀ Did you pronounce that with a falling/rising tone? Say again <i>OK.</i>	Hǎo.	
Try to say <i>Not OK.</i>	Bù hǎo.	

Say *I would like to eat here.* Wǒ xiǎng zài zhèr chī.

Ask him again where would he like to go to eat. Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

His answer is *to a restaurant*. Listen and repeat *restaurant*.

2.	fàndiàn	饭店	飯店
----	---------	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with two falling tones.

Say again *restaurant*. fàndiàn

Now say *To go to a restaurant*. qù fàndiàn

09:00

Try to ask *OK?* Hǎo ma?

Now say *Very good*. Hěn hǎo.

Ask *Where would you like to go to eat?* Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Do you remember how to ask *When?* Shénme shíhou?

Now ask *When would you like to eat?* Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?

*What would you like to eat?* Listen and repeat. Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme?

Notice the word order. Literally, *You would like to eat what*.

Say again, *What would you like to eat?* Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme?

Say *I don't know*. Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Ask her *Where would you like to go to eat?* Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?

Say *To a restaurant*. Qù fàndiàn.

Ask *OK?* Hǎo ma?

Say *OK*. Hǎo.

Say *I would like to drink something*. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Now ask *What would you like to drink?* Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?  
Remember the word order.

12:00

Here is how to say *some tea*.

yìdiǎnr chá

Listen and repeat.

3.	chá	茶	茶
----	-----	---	---

◀ The word tea is pronounced with a rising tone.

Say again *tea*. chá

Now say *some tea* or literally, *a little tea*. yìdiǎnr chá

Say <i>I would like to drink some tea.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.
And now say <i>I would like to go to a restaurant.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng qù fàndiàn.
Ask her again what she would like to drink.	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?
Ask <i>Do you know?</i>	Nǐ zhīdao ma?
Answer <i>No.</i>	Bù zhīdao.
Say <i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.
Ask her if she would like to drink some tea.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá ma?
How would she answer this question, <i>No. Thank you.</i>	Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.
Now answer <i>Yes. I would like to drink some tea.</i>	Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.

*I would like to drink some beer. Listen and repeat beer.*

4.	píjiǔ	啤酒	啤酒
----	-------	----	----

15:00

◀ The word *beer* is pronounced with a rising tone followed by a falling/rising tone.

Say again *beer* píjiǔ

Try to say *some beer* or *a little beer.* yìdiǎnr píjiǔ

Now say *some tea.* yìdiǎnr chá

Ask *OK?* Hǎo ma?

Ask her again *What would you like to drink?* Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?

Say *I would like to drink some tea.* Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.

Say *I would like to drink some beer* Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

Ask her *Where would you like to go to drink?* Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr hē?

Try to ask her  
*Would you like to go to my place?* Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr ma?

How does she say *No?* Bù xiǎng.

Say again *I would like to drink some tea.* Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.

18:00

Now say *I would like to go to a restaurant.* Wǒ xiǎng qù fàndiàn.

Say *But later, OK?* Kěshì guò yìhuìr, hǎo ma?



You want to say <i>Not now</i> . Say literally, <i>Now not OK</i> .	Xiànzài bù hǎo.	
And how would you say <i>OK</i> ?	Hǎo.	
Do you remember how to tell someone that you would like to eat something?	Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
What word means <i>also</i> or <i>too</i> ?	yě	
How would you say <i>I too would like to eat something</i> .	Wǒ yě xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Tell her that you would like to drink something.	Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Ask her if she would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	
How does she answer <i>No. Thank you</i> .	Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.	
How does she say <i>Not now</i> .	Xiànzài bù hǎo.	
<i>Later, OK?</i>	Guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?	21:00
Now say <i>But I would like to eat something</i> .	Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Ask her if she would like to eat now.	Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài chī ma?	
How does she answer <i>OK</i> ?	Hǎo.	
Ask her where she would like to go to eat.	Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?	
Ask her if she would like to go to your place to eat.	<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr chī ma? <b>Nǚrén:</b> Bù xiǎng.	
She says <i>I would not like to go to your place</i> .	Wǒ bù xiǎng qù nǐ nàr.	
How does she answer <i>To a restaurant?</i>	Qù fàndiàn.	
She says <i>I would like to go to a restaurant to eat</i> .	Wǒ xiǎng qù fàndiàn chī.	
Say <i>OK</i> .	Hǎo.	
Ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?	
How does she say <i>I would like to eat now?</i>	Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī.	
She says <i>I would like to go to the Beijing restaurant</i> . Listen and repeat.	Wǒ xiǎng qù Běijīng fàndiàn.	24:00

5.	Běijīng	北京	北京
----	---------	----	----

◀ 北京(Běijīng) is pronounced with a rising/falling tone followed by a high level tone. Say it again.	Běijīng
Ask her <i>Where she would like to go to eat.</i>	Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr chī?
Answer <i>to the Beijing restaurant.</i>	Qù Běijīng fàndiàn.
Try to ask her where this restaurant is located.	Běijīng fàndiàn zài nǎr?
Ask <i>Do you know?</i>	Nǐ zhīdao ma?
Answer <i>Yes. I know.</i>	Zhīdao. Wǒ zhīdao.
How does she tell you <i>It's over there.</i>	Zài nàr.
When you get to the restaurant, you ask her, <i>What would you like to eat?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme?
<i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.
Ask <i>What would you like to drink?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?
Now she says <i>I would like to drink something.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Ask her <i>Would you like to drink some tea?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá ma?
<i>Would you like to drink some beer?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ ma?
Now he asks <i>When would you like to drink?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou hē?
<i>Now, OK?</i>	Xiànzài, hǎo ma?
She answers <i>No. Thank you.</i> Say literally, <i>Not OK. Thank you.</i>	Bù hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.
How would you answer <i>Not now, thank you.</i>	Xiànzài bù hǎo, xièxie nǐ.
How does she say <i>I would like to drink some tea?</i>	Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.
Say <i>But I would not like to drink now.</i>	Kěshì wǒ xiànzài bù xiǎng hē.
How does she ask <i>Later, OK?</i>	Guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?
Say <i>OK</i>	Hǎo.
Say <i>But I would like to drink something now.</i>	Kěshì wǒ xiǎng xiànzài hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi
This is the end of unit 7.	30:00

## Unit 8

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	miss	xiǎojie	小姐	小姐
2.	mister/husband	xiānsheng	先生	先生
3.	lunch	wǔfàn	午饭	午飯
4.	two (non-counting)	liǎng	两	兩
5.	glass/container	bēi	杯	杯
6.	want, to/order, to	yào	要	要
7.	or (question)	háishì	还是	還是
8.	do, to	zuò	做	做
9.	hotel	jiǔdiàn	酒店	酒店
10.	buy, to	mǎi	买	買
11.	with	gēn	跟	跟
12.	whom/who	shéi	谁	誰
13.	together	yìqǐ	一起	一起

## II. Transcript

This is unit 8 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation between Mr. Li and Miss. Wang.

Lǐ Xiānsheng, Wáng Xiǎojie.

1.	Xiānsheng	小姐	小姐
2.	Xiǎojie	先生	先生

They are sitting at a restaurant. At one point Mr. Li will address waitress, calling her xiǎojie or *miss*.

xiǎojie

Listen.

Lǐ Xiānsheng: Wáng Xiǎojie, Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	李先生: 王小姐, 你想现在吃一点儿东西吗?
Mr. Li: Miss Wang, would you like to eat something now?	李先生: 王小姐, 你想现在吃一点儿东西吗?
Wáng Xiǎojie: Xièxie nǐ, Lǐ Xiānsheng. Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài chī, kěshì wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	王小姐: 谢谢你, 李先生。我不想现在吃, 可是我想喝一点儿东西。
Miss Wang: Thank you, Mr. Li. I would not like to eat something now, but I would like to drink something.	王小姐: 謝謝你, 李先生。我不想現在吃, 可是我想喝一點兒東西。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Hǎo. Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?	李先生: 好。你想喝什么?

Mr. Li: OK. What would you like to drink?	李先生: 好。你想喝什麼?
Wáng Xiǎojié: Yìdiǎnr chá... Bù. Yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.	王小姐: 一点儿茶...不。一点儿啤酒。
Miss Wang: Some tea...No. Some beer.	王小姐: 一點兒茶...不。一點兒啤酒。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Wǒ yě xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.	李先生: 我也想喝一点儿啤酒。
Mr. Li: I also would like to drink some beer.	李先生: 我也想喝一點兒啤酒。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: (to waitress) Xiǎojié, wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.	李先生: 小姐, 我想要两杯啤酒。
Mr. Li: Miss, I would like to order two glasses of beer.	李先生: 小姐, 我想要兩杯啤酒。

In the conversation, you heard.  
This means *I would like to order two beers.*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Here's how to say *to eat lunch.*  
Listen and repeat.

chī wǔfàn

3.	wǔfàn	午饭	午飯
----	-------	----	----

◆ Lunch is pronounced with a falling/rising tone, followed by a falling tone.  
How do you say *lunch*?

wǔfàn

How do you ask someone if they would like to eat now?

Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài chī ma?

Answer *Yes. I would like to eat lunch.*

Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī wǔfàn.

Listen and repeat to practice your pronunciation.

Chī wǔfàn.  
Wǒ xiǎng chī wǔfàn.  
Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

And now listen and repeat the same statement at rapid conversational speed.

Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

03:00

Ask her where she would like to go to eat lunch.

Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎ chī wǔfàn?

Try to ask *To a restaurant?*

Qù fàndiàn ma?

Answer *Yes. I would like to go to the Beijing restaurant.*

Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng qù Běijīng fàndiàn.

Answer *No. I would like to go to your place.*

Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr.

Ask *To my place?*

Qù wǒ nàr ma?

Do you remember how to say  
*I too would like to?*

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

Say *But later, OK?*

Kěshì guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?



◀ Notice the falling tone.  
Say *I would like to order.*

09:00

Wǒ xiǎng yào.

Now say *I would like to order two beers.*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

Ask *Would you like to drink some beer?*

Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ ma?

Here's how to say *or*. Listen and repeat.

7.	háishì	还是	還是
----	--------	----	----

◀ *Or* is pronounced with a rising tone then a falling tone.  
Say *or*.

háishì

Try to ask *Would you like to drink tea or beer?*

Nǐ xiǎng hē chá háishì píjiǔ?

Say *Some tea.*

Yìdiǎnr chá.

Say *OK.*

Hǎo.

How would you say  
*I would like to order some tea?*

Wǒ xiǎng yào yìdiǎnr chá.

Do you remember how to say *Later, OK?*

Guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?

Now she says *I would not like to.*

Wǒ bù xiǎng.

Ask *Would you like to drink some tea?*

Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá ma?

Answer *No. Thank you.*

Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.

12:00

*I would like to drink some beer.*

Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

Say *I too would like to.*

Wǒ yě xiǎng.

How would you tell the waitress  
*I would like to order two beers?*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

She asks *would you like to order tea or beer.*

Nǐ xiǎng yào chá háishì píjiǔ?

Say *I don't know.*

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

And how would he say  
*I don't understand what you are saying?*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Say again *I don't know.*

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

She says *I would like to eat lunch now.*

Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

Ask the woman what she would like to eat.

Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme?

Now listen and repeat the question  
*What would you like to do?*

Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

8.	zuò	做	做
----	-----	---	---

◀ *To do* is pronounced with a high falling tone.

Say again *to do*. zuò

Ask her what she would like to do. Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

Now she answers  
*I would like to drink something.* Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

15:00

Ask her where she would like to go to drink something. Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

Ask *To my place?* Qù wǒ nàr ma?

*I would not like to go to your place.* Wǒ bù xiǎng qù nǐ nàr.

Now she says *to the hotel*. Just listen. Qù jiǔdiàn.

9.	jiǔdiàn	酒店	酒店
----	---------	----	----

Listen and repeat *hotel*. jiǔdiàn

◀ That's pronounced with a falling/rising tone followed by a falling tone.

Say again *hotel*. jiǔdiàn

Try to say *I would like to go to the hotel*. Wǒ xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn.

Ask *To go where?* Qù nǎr?

Now say *I would like to go to a restaurant*. Wǒ xiǎng qù fàndiàn.

Ask her what she would like to do? Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

Listen and repeat the answer  
*I would like to buy something.* Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

10.	mǎi	买	買
-----	-----	---	---

◀ *To buy* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Say it again. mǎi

And how do you say *to do*? zuò

18:00

Say *What would you like to do?* Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

Say *I would like to buy something*. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Now ask her what she would like to buy. Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?

Do you remember how to ask  
*Where would you like to go?* Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr?

Say *I would like to go to the hotel.* Wǒ xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn.  
*I would like to drink something.* Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.  
 Ask her if she would like to order tea or beer. Nǐ xiǎng yào chá háishì píjiǔ?  
 How would you say  
*I would like to order two beers?* Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.  
 Listen to how you would ask along with whom? Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

Here's the word *with*. Listen and repeat.

11.	gēn	跟	跟
-----	-----	---	---

◀ Did you here the high level tone? Say again *with*. gēn

Listen and repeat *Whom?*

12.	shéi	谁	誰
-----	------	---	---

◀ This is pronounced with a rising tone. Say again *Whom?* Shéi?

21:00

Listen and repeat *With whom* or *Along with whom?* Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

What part of that means *along?*

13.	yìqǐ	一起	一起
-----	------	----	----

◀ This is pronounced with a falling and falling/rising tone.

Try to ask *With whom?* Gēn shéi yìqǐ?  
 Be careful of the word order.

Now try to answer *With you.* Gēn nǐ yìqǐ.

Ask me what I would like to do. Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

Say *I would like to buy something.* Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Ask *Would you like to buy something?* Nǐ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Now answer *No. I would like to eat lunch now.* Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

Ask *With whom?* Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

Say *With you.* Gēn nǐ yìqǐ.

Now let's try conversing with the woman. Begin by saying *Hello* to her. Nǐ: Nǐ hǎo.  
 Nǚrén: Nǐ hǎo.

24:00

Ask her what she would like to do now. Nǐ: Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài zuò shénme?



<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Nǐ ne? Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	女人：我不知道。你呢？你想喝一点儿东西吗？
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know. How about you? Would you like to drink something?	女人：我不知道。你呢？你想喝一點兒東西嗎？

Answer affirmatively.

<b>Nǚ:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī. Xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.	你：想。我想喝一点儿东西。想。谢谢你。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I would like to drink something. Yes.Thank you.	你：想。我想喝一點兒東西。想。謝謝你。

How does she ask *With whom?*

**Nǚrén:** Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

Try to ask if she would like to drink something with you.

**Nǚ:** Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Xiǎng. Shénme shíhou?	女人：想。什么时候？
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. What time?	女人：想。什麼時候？

Tell her *Now*.

**Nǚ:** Xiànzài.

Ask her where you would like to go to drink?

**Nǚ:** Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr hē?

*Would you like to go to the hotel?*

**Nǚ:** Nǐ xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn ma?

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng qù Běijīng fàndiàn hē.	女人：不想。我想去北京饭店喝。
<b>Woman:</b> No. I would like to go to the Beijing restaurant to drink.	女人：不想。我想去北京飯店喝。

Say *OK*.

**Nǚ:** Hǎo.

Ask her where the Beijing restaurant is located.

**Nǚ:** Běijīng fàndiàn zài nǎr?

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Nǐ ne?	女人：我不知道。你呢？
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know. How about you?	女人：我不知道。你呢？

Now tell her *Yes. I know*.

**Nǚ:** Zhīdao. Wǒ zhīdao.

Say *It's located over there*.

**Nǚ:** Zài nàr.

Now ask her

*Would you like to drink tea or beer?*

**Nǚ:** Nǐ xiǎng hē chá háishì píjiǔ?

27:00

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.	女人：我想喝一点儿茶。
<b>Woman:</b> I would like to drink some tea.	女人：我想喝一點兒茶。

How does she tell you that she'd like to eat lunch?

**Nǚrén:** Wǒ xiǎng chī wǔfàn. Nǐ ne?

Tell her that *I would not like to eat now. Later, OK?*      **Nǚ:** Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài chī. Guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?

She says *OK.*      **Nǚrén:** Hǎo.

Tell her that you would like to drink something.      **Nǚ:** Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?      女人: 你想喝什么?

**Woman:** What would you like to drink?      女人: 你想喝什麼?

How does she ask if you would like to drink tea or beer?      **Nǚrén:** Nǐ xiǎng hē chá háishì píjiǔ?

And how would you tell her that you would like to order some tea?      **Nǚ:** Wǒ xiǎng yào yìdiǎnr chá.

Tell her that *I would like to eat lunch with you. Be careful of the word order.*      **Nǚ:** Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn.

**Nǚrén:** Wǒ yě xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn.      女人: 我也想跟你一起吃午饭。

**Woman:** I also would like to eat lunch with you.      女人: 我也想跟你一起吃午饭。

This is the end of unit 8.

30:00

## Unit 9

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	or (statement)	huòzhě	或者	或者
2.	What time?	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?	几点钟?	幾點鐘?
3.	1	yī	一	一
4.	9	jiǔ	九	九
5.	8	bā	八	八
6.	impossible	bù xíng	不行	不行

## II. Transcript

This is unit 9 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this conversation between Miss Wang and Mr. Li.

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Wáng Xiǎojié, nǐ hǎo.	李先生: 王小姐, 你好。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Hello, Miss Wang.	李先生: 王小姐, 你好。
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	王小姐: 你好。
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Hello.	王小姐: 你好。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Wáng Xiǎojié, nǐ xiǎng xiànzài zuò shénme?	李先生: 王小姐, 你想现在做什么?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Miss Wang, what would you like to do now?	李先生: 王小姐, 你想現在做什麼?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Nǐ ne?	王小姐: 我不知道。你呢?
<b>Miss Wang:</b> I don't know. How about you?	王小姐: 我不知道。你呢?
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn. Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī ma?	李先生: 我想现在吃午饭。你想跟我一起吃吗?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> I am going to eat lunch now. Would you like to eat with me?	李先生: 我想現在吃午飯。你想跟我一起吃嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Xiǎng. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng qù Běijīng fàndiàn chī. Hǎo ma?	王小姐: 想。可是我想去北京饭店吃。好吗?
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Yes. But I would like to go to the Beijing Restaurant to eat, OK?	王小姐: 想。可是我想去北京飯店吃。好嗎?
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo. Wǒ yě xiǎng qù Běijīng fàndiàn chī.	李先生: 好。我也想去北京饭店吃。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> OK. I too would like to go to the Beijing Restaurant.	李先生: 好。我也想去北京飯店吃。

Now ask me how I am.

Nǐ hǎo ma?

Ask me if I can speak Mandarin.

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Ask me where Long Peace Street is located.	Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr?	
Ask <i>Do you know where Long Peace Street is located?</i>	Nǐ zhīdao Cháng Ān Jiē zài nǎr ma?	
Now ask <i>Where is the Beijing restaurant?</i>	Běijīng fàndiàn zài nǎr?	
Answer <i>Over there.</i>	Zài nàr.	
Tell me that you would like to eat lunch now.	Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.	
Ask me if I would like to eat lunch.	Nǐ xiǎng chī wǔfàn ma?	
Ask <i>Would you like to eat lunch with me?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn ma?	
Answer <i>I would not like to eat lunch.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng chī wǔfàn.	03:00
Say <i>I'd like to buy something.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	
Ask her <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?	
And now ask her what she would like to buy.	Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?	
Ask <i>With whom</i> or <i>Along with whom?</i>	Gēn shéi yìqǐ?	
Answer <i>With you.</i>	Gēn nǐ yìqǐ.	
How would you tell a waiter <i>I would like to order two beers?</i>	Wǒ xiǎng liǎng bēi píjiǔ.	
Ask her if she would like to drink some beer.	Nǐ xiǎng hē píjiǔ ma?	
Ask her <i>Would you like to drink tea or beer?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē chá háishì píjiǔ?	
Here's how she would say <i>I would to order tea or beer.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng yào chá huòzhě píjiǔ.	
<b>1.</b>	huòzhě	或者 或者
<p>◀ The words that means <i>or</i> is pronounced with a falling tone, followed by a falling/rising tone. Say these words for <i>or</i> again.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">huòzhě</p>		
<p>Mandarin uses different words for <i>or</i> depending on whether you are making a statement or a asking question.</p>		
06:00		
Say <i>I would like to order tea or beer.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi chá huòzhě píjiǔ.	
Now ask me if I would like to drink something or eat something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī háishì chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī?	
Ask <i>With whom?</i>	Gēn shéi yìqǐ?	
Say <i>I would like to drink something with you.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	

Try to say *But not here.*  
Literally, *But is not located here.*

Kěshì bú shì zài zhèr.

Ask her what would she like to do.

Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

How does she say *I would like to drink something or eat something.*

Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī huòzhě chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

09:00

Now she says *I would like to go to your place to drink something.*

Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Ask *OK?*

Hǎo ma?

Say *OK. I too would like to drink something.*

Hǎo. Wǒ yě xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Here's how to ask *At what time?* Listen and repeat.

2.	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?	几点钟?	幾點鐘?
----	----------------	------	------

◀ That's pronounced with a rising tone, followed falling/rising and high level tones.<sup>1</sup>

Ask again *At what time?*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Here's the answer. *One o'clock.* Just listen.

Yī diǎn zhōng.

3.	yī	一	一
----	----	---	---

Listen and repeat.

yī

◀ 1 is pronounced with a high level tone.  
Listen and repeat.

yī

Say 1.

yī

Say *1 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng.

Ask again *At what time?*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Answer *1 o'clock* or *at 1 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng.

*At* is understood. Now listen and repeat.  
*9 o'clock.*

Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

4.	jiǔ	九	九
----	-----	---	---

Say 9.

jiǔ

Ask him what he would like to do.

Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

12:00

And now say *I would like to drink some tea.*

Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.

Say *At 9 o'clock.*

Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

<sup>1</sup> 几点 (*what time!* Jǐ diǎn) is written two falling/rising tones, but as per combination rule number 3, it is pronounced as a rising tone, followed by a falling/rising tone.

Ask *At what time.*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Answer *At 1 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng.

Now listen and repeat the number 8.

5.	bā	八	八
----	----	---	---

◀ Can you guess the tone? It's a high level tone. Say *8 o'clock.*

Bā diǎn zhōng.

Try to ask *Is it at 8 o'clock?*

Shì bā diǎn zhōng ma?

Answer *No. It's at 9 o'clock.*

Bú shì. Shì jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

Do you remember how to say  
*I would like to order two beers.*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

◀ Did you pronounce the number *two* with a falling/rising tone?  
Try to say *2 o'clock.*

Liǎng diǎn zhōng.

*8 o'clock.*

Bā diǎn zhōng.

*1 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng.

*9 o'clock.*

Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

Now say *At 2 o'clock.*

Liǎng diǎn zhōng.

15:00

Say *At 1 o'clock or 2 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng huòzhě liǎng diǎn zhōng.

Ask *At what time?*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Now ask *At 1 o'clock or at 2 o'clock?*

Yī diǎn zhōng háishì liǎng diǎn zhōng?

Say *At 2 o'clock, OK?*

Liǎng diǎn zhōng, hǎo ma?

Say *OK. But I would like to go to the hotel to eat lunch.*

Hǎo. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn chī wǔfàn.

Say *At 8 o'clock.*

Bā diǎn zhōng.

Now say *At 9 o'clock.*

Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

Ask *When?*

Shénme shíhou?

At *What time?*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Ask *At 8 o'clock or at 9 o'clock?*

Bā diǎn zhōng háishì jiǔ diǎn zhōng?

Answer *I don't know.*

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

18:00

Say <i>At 2 o'clock OK?</i>	Liǎng diǎn zhōng, hǎo ma?
Say <i>OK. At the hotel.</i> Remember to say <i>located at.</i>	Hǎo. Zài jiǔdiàn.
How would you say <i>Please let me ask?</i>	Qǐngwèn?
Now ask <i>Where is the Beijing Restaurant located?</i>	Běijīng fàndiàn zài nǎr?
She answers <i>It's located over there.</i>	Zài nàr.
Ask her what she would like to do.	Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
<i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.
Ask <i>Would you like to drink something?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
Ask <i>With whom?</i>	Gēn shéi yìqǐ?
Ask <i>Would you like to drink something with me?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
Ask <i>Would you like to drink something now?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
	21:00
How would tell a waiter or waitress <i>I would like to order two beers?</i>	Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.
Now ask your companion <i>How about you?</i>	Nǐ ne?
Ask her again <i>Would you like to drink something with me?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
How does she answer this question <i>No. Thank you?</i>	Bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.
Answer <i>Now not OK.</i>	Xiànzài bù hǎo.
Now ask <i>How about later?</i>	Guò yìhuǐr ne?
Answer <i>Later not OK.</i>	Guò yìhuǐr bù hǎo.
Try to ask <i>At 1 o'clock OK?</i>	Yī diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?
Say <i>Not OK.</i>	Bù hǎo.
Ask <i>At 2 o'clock OK?</i>	Liǎng diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?
Try to say <i>Not OK. Thank you. I would not like to drink at 2 o'clock.</i>	Bù hǎo. Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ bù xiǎng liǎng diǎn zhōng hē.

24:00

Ask her if she would like to drink something at 8 o'clock. Nǐ xiǎng bā diǎn zhōng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Ask *at 8 o'clock or at 9 o'clock?* Bā diǎn zhōng háishì jiǔ diǎn zhōng?

She answers *Impossible*. Listen and repeat.

6.	bù xíng	不行	不行
----	---------	----	----

◀ The tone in that falls from the high level and then rises again.

Say again *Impossible*. Bù xíng.

Ask *When would you like to drink something?* Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

She answers *I would not like to drink with you*. Wǒ bù xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ hē.

Say *You would not like to drink with me*. Nǐ bù xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē.

*But you would like to eat lunch with me*. Kěshì nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn.

And how do you say *At the restaurant?* Zài fàndiàn.

Do you remember how to say *At 1 o'clock or at 2 o'clock?* Yī diǎn zhōng huòzhě liǎng diǎn zhōng.

27:00

Now ask *When would you like to eat?* Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī?

Try to ask *8 o'clock or 9 o'clock?* Bā diǎn zhōng háishì jiǔ diǎn zhōng?

*Impossible*. Bù xíng.

She says Yī diǎn zhōng bù xíng. Liǎng diǎn zhōng bù xíng.  
*1 o'clock impossible. 2 o'clock impossible.*

Now she adds for good measure *8 o'clock impossible. 9 o'clock impossible*.  
Say it for her. Bā diǎn zhōng bù xíng. Jiǔ diǎn zhōng bù xíng.

Ask *At what time?* Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

*When would you like to eat something?* Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

She says *You don't understand*. Nǐ bù míngbai.

*What don't I understand?* Try it. Wǒ bù míngbai shénme?

She answers *You don't understand what I say*. Nǐ bù míngbai wǒ shuō shénme.

This is the end of unit 9.

30:00



## Unit 10

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	5	wǔ	五	五
2.	3	sān	三	三
3.	4	sì	四	四
4.	as for me	wǒ ā	我啊	我啊

## II. Transcript

This is unit 10 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Listen to this Mandarin conversation.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Lǐ Xiānsheng, wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī. Hǎo ma?	女人: 李先生, 我想跟你一起吃一点儿东西。好吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Mr. Li, I would like to eat lunch together with you. OK?	女人: 李先生, 我想跟你一起吃一點兒東西。好嗎?
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Jǐ diǎn zhōng? Liǎng diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?	李先生: 几点钟? 两点钟好吗?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> What time? Is 2 o'clock OK?	李先生: 幾點鐘? 兩點鐘好嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bù hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng guò yìhuǐr chī.	女人: 不好。我想过一会儿吃。
<b>Woman:</b> Not OK. I would like to eat later.	女人: 不好。我想過一會兒吃。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Bā diǎn zhōng hái shì jiǔ diǎn zhōng?	李先生: 八点钟还是九点钟?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> 8 o'clock or 9 o'clock?	李先生: 八點鐘還是九點鐘?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.	女人: 九点钟。
<b>Woman:</b> 9 o'clock.	女人: 九點鐘。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo.	李先生: 好。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> OK.	李先生: 好。

Listen again. (the conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember how to say  
*I would like to eat something?*

Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Now say *I'd like to buy something.*

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Ask *What would you like to do?*

Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?

Say again *I would like to buy something.*

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī.

Ask *At what time?*

Jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Say *At 1 o'clock.*

Yī diǎn zhōng.

Tell her <i>I'd like to drink some tea.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.	
And how would you say <i>At 9 o'clock?</i>	Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.	
Now ask <i>Is it at 9 o'clock?</i>	Shì jiǔ diǎn zhōng ma?	
Do you remember how to say <i>It's impossible or impossible?</i>	Bù xíng.	
Try to say <i>9 o'clock is impossible.</i>	Jiǔ diǎn zhōng bù xíng.	03:00
Say <i>At 8 o'clock.</i>	Bā diǎn zhōng.	
Now say <i>At 2 o'clock.</i>	Liǎng diǎn zhōng.	
Do you remember how to say <i>You don't understand?</i>	Nǐ bù míngbai.	
Ask <i>What I don't understand?</i>	Wǒ bù míngbai shénme?	
Ask her what she would like to drink.	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?	
Ask her <i>Do you know?</i>	Nǐ zhīdao ma?	
Answer <i>No. I don't know.</i>	Bù zhīdao. Wǒ bù zhīdao.	
Ask whether she would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	
She says <i>I would not like to drink anything.</i> Listen and repeat.	Wǒ bù xiǎng hē dōngxi.	
How do you say <i>thing</i> or <i>anything</i> in Mandarin?	dōngxi	
Say again <i>I would not like to drink anything.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng hē dōngxi.	
How would she say <i>But I would like to eat something?</i>	Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	06:00
Do you remember how to ask <i>Would you like to go to the hotel?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn ma?	
Ask <i>Would you like to drink something?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	
How would you ask <i>Would you like to order tea or beer?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng yào chá háishì píjiǔ?	
Say <i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.	
Say <i>Two beers</i> or <i>Two glasses of beer.</i>	Liǎng bēi píjiǔ.	

Ask <i>What would you like to drink?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?
How does she say <i>I would not like to drink anything?</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng hē dōngxi.
Ask <i>Would you like to eat something with me?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
Say <i>Yes. I would like to eat something with you.</i>	Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Say <i>I would not like to go to the hotel.</i>	Wǒ bù xiǎng qù jiǔdiàn.
Do you remember how to ask <i>What would you like to do?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
Say <i>I would like to go to your place to eat.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ nàr chī.
Ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?
<i>When would you like to eat something?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi?
Ask <i>At what time?</i>	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?
To ask <i>What time is it?</i> in Mandarin you ask literally, <i>Now at what time?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
Did your tone match the speaker's? Ask again <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
Say <i>It's 1 o'clock. It's</i> is understood.	Yī diǎn zhōng.
Tell me that it's 9 o'clock.	Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.
Ask again <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng.
Answer that it's 2 o'clock.	Liǎng diǎn zhōng.
Here's how to say <i>it's 5 o'clock.</i> Listen and repeat.	Wǔ diǎn zhōng.

09:00

1.	wǔ	五	五
----	----	---	---

◀ 5 is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.  
Say 5.

wǔ

Ask what time it is. Remember to use *now*.

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Listen and repeat the answer *It's 3 o'clock.*

Sān diǎn zhōng.

2.	sān	三	三
----	-----	---	---

◀ 3 is pronounced with a high level tone.

12:00

Say *3 o'clock*. Sān diǎn zhōng.

Now tell me that *It's 5 o'clock*. Wǔ diǎn zhōng.

Listen and repeat *4 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng.

3.	sì	四	四
----	----	---	---

◆ 4 is pronounced with a falling tone.

Tell me *It's 4 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng.

Tell me that *It's 5 o'clock*. Wǔ diǎn zhōng.

Tell me that *It's 2 o'clock*. Liǎng diǎn zhōng.

Tell me that *It's 4 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng.

Listen and repeat. *Is it 4 o'clock?* Shì sì diǎn zhōng ma?

Now ask me if *It's 9 o'clock*. Shì jiǔ diǎn zhōng ma?

Say *No*. Bú shì.

Now say *It's 8 o'clock*. Bā diǎn zhōng.

Say *4 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng.

Ask what time it is. Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Say *9 o'clock*. Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

*3 o'clock*. Sān diǎn zhōng.

*5 o'clock*. Wǔ diǎn zhōng.

*4 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng.

15:00

Now say *4 o'clock or 5 o'clock*. Sì diǎn zhōng huòzhě wǔ diǎn zhōng.

Ask again what time it is. Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Say *I don't know. But I'd like to eat something*. Wǒ bù zhīdao. Kěshì wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Ask *With whom?* Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

Ask her if she would like to eat something with you. Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

How would she say *I would not like to eat now. Later, OK?* Wǒ bù xiǎng xiànzài chī. Guò yìhuǐr, hǎo ma?

*I'm going to have lunch now.*  
Listen and repeat.

Wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

18:00

What part of that means *going to*? yào  
What else does this word mean? It can also mean *to order* or literally, *to want*.

Say *You are going to order lunch now.*

Wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

Now ask *Are you going to eat something?*

Nǐ yào chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Ask *Are you going to eat something now?*

Nǐ yào xiànzài chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Here's how to answer this question *Yes*.  
Listen and repeat.

Shì.

This is how to answer *yes* to a *going to* question.  
Answer *Yes. I am going to have lunch now.*

Shì. Wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

Ask her again if she would like to eat something.

Nǐ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?

Do you remember how to say  
*I wouldn't like to eat anything?*

Wǒ bù xiǎng chī dōngxi.

You want to say as for me. Listen and repeat.

4.	wǒ ā	我啊	我啊
----	------	----	----

Say *As for me.*

Wǒ ā.

Now try to say  
*As for me I'm going to have lunch now.*

Wǒ ā. Wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

21:00

Try to say *I'm going to eat at 5 o'clock.*

Wǒ yào wǔ diǎn zhōng chī.

Ask me if I'm going to eat at 5 o'clock.

Nǐ yào wǔ diǎn zhōng chī ma?

Answer *Yes*.

Shì.

And how would you answer *No*?

Bú shì.

Say *I'm going to eat at 8 o'clock.*

Wǒ yào bā diǎn zhōng chī.

Say *I'm going to drink something now.*

Wǒ yào xiànzài hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

And how would you say  
*I would like to order two beers.*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

Now ask *When?*

Shénme shíhou?

Try to ask  
*When are you going to drink something?*

Nǐ yào shénme shíhou hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

Ask *Now or later?* Xiànzài háishì guò yìhuǐr?  
 How would you say *At 3 o'clock or at 4 o'clock.* Sān diǎn zhōng huòzhě sì diǎn zhōng.  
 She says *As for me.* Wǒ ā.  
 As for me *I'm going to drink at 9 o'clock.* Wǒ ā. Wǒ yào jiǔ diǎn zhōng hē.

Ask *What time is it?* Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?  
 Answer *1 o'clock.* Yī diǎn zhōng.  
 Ask me when I am going to eat. Nǐ yào shénme shíhou chī?  
 And how do I tell you *I'm going to have lunch now.* Wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.

24:00

Now the young woman is going to converse with you. You are to answer her questions. Begin by greeting her.

Nǚ: Nǐ hǎo.	你: 你好。
<b>You:</b> Hello.	你: 你好。
Nǚrén: Nǐ hǎo. Qǐngwèn. Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	女人: 你好。请问, 你想跟我一起吃一点儿东西吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Hello. May I ask, would you like to eat something together with me?	女人: 你好。請問, 你想跟我一起吃一點兒東西嗎?

Give a positive answer.

Nǚ: Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	你: 想。我想跟你一起吃一点儿东西。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I would like to eat something together with you.	你: 想。我想跟你一起吃一點兒東西。

She is going to suggest various times to you. After each suggestion, tell her *no*. You want to eat an hour later than she does.

Nǚrén: Nǐ xiǎng bā diǎn zhōng chī ma?	女人: 你想八点钟吃吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Would you like to eat at 8 o'clock?	女人: 你想八點鐘吃嗎?
Nǚ: Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng jiǔ diǎn zhōng chī.	你: 不想。我想九点钟吃。
<b>You:</b> No. I would like to eat at 9 o'clock.	你: 不想。我想九點鐘吃。
Nǚrén: Jiǔ diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Liǎng diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?	女人: 九点钟不好。两点钟好吗?
<b>Woman:</b> 9 o'clock is not good. 2 o'clock OK?	女人: 九點鐘不好。兩點鐘好嗎?
Nǚ: Liǎng diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng sān diǎn zhōng chī.	你: 两点钟不好。我想三点钟吃。
<b>You:</b> 2 o'clock not good. I would like to eat at 3 o'clock.	你: 兩點鐘不好。我想三點鐘吃。
Nǚrén: Sān diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng sì diǎn zhōng chī. Hǎo ma?	女人: 三点钟不好。我想四点钟吃。好

	吗?
<b>Woman:</b> 3 o'clock is not good. I would like to eat at 4 o'clock, OK?	女人: 三點鐘不好。我想四點鐘吃。好嗎?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Sì diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng wǔ diǎn zhōng chī.	你: 四点钟不好。我想五点钟吃。
<b>You:</b> 4 o'clock is not good. I would like to eat at 5 o'clock.	你: 四點鐘不好。我想五點鐘吃。(27:00)
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ ā. Wǒ bù xiǎng wǔ diǎn zhōng chī.	女人: 我啊。我不想五点钟吃。
<b>Woman:</b> As for me, I would not like to eat at 5 o'clock.	女人: 我啊。我不想五點鐘吃。
Ask her when she would like to have lunch.	<b>Nǚ:</b> Nǚ xiǎng shénme shíhou chī wǔfàn?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao.	女人: 我不知道。
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know.	女人: 我不知道。
Say <i>As for me, I'm going to have lunch now.</i>	<b>Nǚ:</b> Wǒ ā, wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn.
How does she ask <i>with whom?</i>	<b>Nǚrén:</b> Gēn shéi yìqǐ?
Ask her if she would like to have lunch with you.	<b>Nǚ:</b> Nǚ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn ma?
How does she answer <i>Yes. I would like to have lunch along with you?</i>	<b>Nǚrén:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn.
Ask <i>At what time?</i>	<b>Nǚ:</b> Jǐ diǎn zhōng?
Try to ask <i>When would you like to have lunch with me?</i> Literally, <i>You would like when along with me to eat lunch?</i>	<b>Nǚ:</b> Nǚ xiǎng shénme shíhou gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn?
How would she say <i>Later, OK?</i>	<b>Nǚrén:</b> Guò yìhuìr, hǎo ma?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Hǎo. Guò yìhuìr.	你: 好。过一会儿。
<b>You:</b> OK. Later.	你: 好。過一會兒。

This is the end of unit 10.

30:00

## Unit 11

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	6	liù	六	六
2.	7	qī	七	七
3.	in that case	nàme	那么	那麼
4.	let's say	ba	吧	吧
5.	today	jīntiān	今天	今天
6.	evening	wǎnshang	晚上	晚上
7.	dinner	wǎnfàn	晚饭	晚飯
8.	10	shí	十	十
9.	tomorrow	míngtiān	明天	明天
10.	see you tomorrow	míngtiān jiàn	明天见	明天見

## II. Transcript

This is unit 11 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn pǔtōnghuà duìhuà. 请听这段普通话对话。

Please listen to this Mandarin conversation. 請聽這段普通話對話。

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn pǔtōnghuà duìhuà)

In it, you'll hear liù diǎn zhōng or 6 o'clock.

1.	liù	六	六
----	-----	---	---

(qǐng tīng)

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Wáng Xiǎojie, qǐngwèn, nǐ xiǎng jǐ diǎn zhōng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī fàn?	<b>李先生:</b> 王小姐, 請問, 你想幾點鐘跟我一起吃飯?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Miss Wang, may I ask, what time would you like to eat together with me?	<b>李先生:</b> 王小姐, 請問, 你想幾點鐘跟我一起吃飯?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Yī diǎn zhōng.	<b>王小姐:</b> 一點鐘。
<b>Miss Wang:</b> One o'clock.	<b>王小姐:</b> 一點鐘。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Yī diǎn zhōng, bù hǎo. Liǎng diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?	<b>李先生:</b> 一點鐘不好。兩點鐘好嗎?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> 1 o'clock is not good. Is 2 o'clock OK?	<b>李先生:</b> 一點鐘不好。兩點鐘好嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Liǎng diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Sān diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?	<b>王小姐:</b> 兩點鐘不好。三點鐘好嗎?
<b>Miss Wang:</b> 2 o'clock is not good. 3 o'clock?	<b>王小姐:</b> 兩點鐘不好。三點鐘好嗎?
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Sān diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Sì diǎn zhōng ne?	<b>李先生:</b> 三點鐘不好。四點鐘呢?



<b>Mr. Li:</b> 3 o'clock is not good. 4 o'clock then?	<b>李先生:</b> 三點鐘不好。四點鐘呢?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Sì diǎn zhōng bù xíng.	<b>王小姐:</b> 四點鐘不行。
<b>Miss Wang:</b> 4 o'clock is impossible.	<b>王小姐:</b> 四點鐘不行。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Nàme, wǔ diǎn zhōng ba? Hǎo ma?	<b>李先生:</b> 那麼，五點鐘吧？好嗎？
<b>Mr. Li:</b> In that case, let's say 5 o'clock. OK?	<b>李先生:</b> 那麼，五點鐘把？好嗎？
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Wǔ diǎn zhōng bù xíng. Liù diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?	<b>王小姐:</b> 五點鐘不行。六點鐘好嗎？
<b>Miss Wang:</b> 5 o'clock is impossible. Is 6 o'clock OK?	<b>王小姐:</b> 五點鐘不行。六點中好嗎？
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Bù hǎo. Liù diǎn zhōng bù hǎo.	<b>李先生:</b> 不好。六點鐘不好。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Not OK. 6 o'clock is not OK.	<b>李先生:</b> 不好。六點鐘不好。
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Lǐ Xiānsheng, wǒ bù xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī fàn.	<b>王小姐:</b> 李先生，我不想跟你一起吃飯。
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Mr. Li, I would not like to eat together with you.	<b>王小姐:</b> 李先生，我不想跟你一起吃飯。

In this conversation, you heard:

Nàme, wǔ diǎn zhōng ba. Or *In that case, let's say 5 o'clock.*

Listen again. (the conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember how to ask someone what time it is?

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Ask *Do you know?*

Nǐ zhīdao ma?

Answer *I don't know.*

Wǒ bù zhīdao.

And how would you answer *Yes. I know.*

Zhīdao. Wǒ zhīdao.

Tell him that *It's 3 o'clock.*

Sān diǎn zhōng.

Tell him *It's 5 o'clock.*

Wǔ diǎn zhōng.

Ask him if he is going to eat something now.

Nǐ yào xiànzài chī yìdiǎn dōngxi ma?

03:00

Do you remember how to answer yes to this question?

Shì.

Ask him if he's going to eat lunch now.

Nǐ yào xiànzài chī wǔfàn ma?

Now answer  
*No. I would not like to eat anything now.*

Bú shì. Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī yìdiǎn dōngxi.

Say *As for me.*

Wǒ ā.

*As for me, I am going eat something later.*

Wǒ ā, wǒ yào guò yìhuìr chī yìdiǎn dōngxi.

Say <i>8 o'clock</i> .	Bā diǎn zhōng.
Tell her that you're going to drink something later.	Wǒ yào guò yìhuìr hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Now say <i>I'm going to drink some tea later</i> .	Wǒ yào guò yìhuìr hē yìdiǎnr chá.
Say <i>At 9 o'clock</i> .	Jiǔ diǎn zhōng.
Ask <i>At what time?</i>	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?
And how would you ask <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
How does she answer <i>Now it's 4 o'clock</i> .	Xiànzài sì diǎn zhōng.
Now say <i>I'm going to have lunch at 2 o'clock</i> .	Wǒ yào liǎng diǎn zhōng chī wǔfàn.
<i>At 1 o'clock or at 2 o'clock?</i>	Yī diǎn zhōng huòzhě liǎng diǎn zhōng?
Ask her if she would like to have lunch with you.	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǔfàn ma?
How does she ask <i>When?</i>	Shénme shíhou?
How would she ask <i>Located where?</i>	Zài nǎr?
Try to ask <i>When? Now?</i>	Shénme shíhou? Xiànzài ma?
Say <i>It isn't now</i> .	Bú shì xiànzài.

06:00

Here's how to say *Six o'clock*.

qǐng gēn zhè shuō.

请跟着说。

Please repeat.

請跟著說。

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Liù diǎn zhōng.

◀ Say again *six* using a falling tone.

liù

Say *At six o'clock*.

Liù diǎn zhōng.

*Or at seven o'clock.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Huòzhě qī diǎn zhōng.

Please repeat.

09:00

2.	qī	七	七
----	----	---	---

◀ 7 is pronounced with a high level tone.

Say again *7 o'clock*.

Qī diǎn zhōng.

Say *At 6 o'clock or at 7 o'clock*.

Liù diǎn zhōng huòzhě qī diǎn zhōng.

Pay attention to the tones.

Do you remember how to say *Impossible*?      Bù xíng.

Say *6 o'clock, impossible*.      Liù diǎn zhōng, bù xíng.

He says *In that case, 7 o'clock*.      Nàme, qī diǎn zhōng.

Just listen and repeat.

3.	nàme	那么	那麼
----	------	----	----

Here's how to say *In that case*.      nàme  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

◀ Say *In that case* or *then* using two falling tones.<sup>1</sup>      nàme

*In that case, let's say 7 o'clock*.      Nàme, qī diǎn zhōng ba.

4.	ba	吧	吧
----	----	---	---

◀ The *ba* at the end of that sentence is pronounced with a falling tone and it means *let's say*.<sup>2</sup>  
Say *In that case, let's say seven o'clock*.      Nàme, qī diǎn zhōng ba.

Here's how to say *this evening*. Just listen.      Jīntiān wǎnshang.

5.	jīntiān	今天	今天
----	---------	----	----

12:00

First the word *today*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)      jīntiān

◀ Did you hear the two high level tones? Say *Today*.      Jīntiān.

Here's how to say *In the evening*.

6.	wǎnshang	晚上	晚上
----	----------	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with a falling/rising tone, followed by a falling tone.<sup>3</sup>  
Say again *In the evening*.      Jīntiān wǎnshang.

Try to say *This evening*.      Jīntiān wǎnshang.

Here's how to say *to eat dinner*.      Chī wǎnfàn.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

7.	wǎnfàn	晚饭	晚飯
----	--------	----	----

Say *dinner* or *evening meal*.      wǎnfàn

Try to say  
*This evening, I'm going to eat dinner*.      Jīntiān wǎnshang, wǒ yào chī wǎnfàn.

That word order was the same as in English.  
Now ask *Would you like to eat at 5 o'clock?*      Nǐ xiǎng wǔ diǎn zhōng chī ma?

<sup>1</sup> In 那么 (*in that case/nàme*), second syllable has a neutral tone.

<sup>2</sup> 吧 (*ba*) has a neutral tone.

<sup>3</sup> 晚上 (*evening/wǎnshang*) is pronounced with a falling/rising tone followed by a neutral tone.

15:00

Say *At 7 o'clock.*

Qī diǎn zhōng.

The woman says *at 10 o'clock.*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Shí diǎn zhōng.

8.	shí	十	十
----	-----	---	---

What's the Mandarin number *10*?

shí

◀ What other words sound like this number? The word *to be* is very similar but *to be* is pronounced with a falling tone (shì) while *10* is pronounced with a rising tone (shí).

Say *At 10 o'clock.*

Shí diǎn zhōng.

Say *This evening.*

Jintiān wǎnshang.

Try to say *I'm going to eat dinner at 10 o'clock* Wǒ yào shí diǎn zhōng chī wǎnfàn.Here's how to say *Tomorrow.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

9.	míngtiān	明天	明天
----	----------	----	----

◀ The tones are rising and high level.

Say *tomorrow.*

míngtiān

Do you remember how to ask *How about you?*

Nǐ ne?

Try to ask *How about tomorrow?*

Míngtiān ne?

Answer

*Tomorrow, I'm going to eat dinner with you.*

Míngtiān, wǒ yào gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.

18:00

Say *At 3 o'clock or at 4 o'clock.*

Sān diǎn zhōng huòzhě sì diǎn zhōng.

Say *Not OK. At 6 o'clock or at 7 o'clock.*

Bù hǎo. Liù diǎn zhōng huòzhě qī diǎn zhōng.

Say *9 o'clock is not OK.*

Jiù diǎn zhōng bù hǎo.

Say *In that case, let's say 10 o'clock.*

Nàme, shí diǎn zhōng ba?

Try to say *It is not at 10 o'clock.*

Bú shì shí diǎn zhōng.

Did you pronounce that as the speaker did?

Say again *It is not at 10 o'clock.*

Bú shì shí diǎn zhōng.

Say *Tomorrow.*

Míngtiān

How do you say *This evening.* Or literally, *Today, in the evening.*

Jintiān wǎnshang.

Try to say *Tomorrow evening.*

Míngtiān wǎnshang.

21:00

Say <i>Tomorrow evening at 7 o'clock.</i>	Míngtiān wǎnshang qī diǎn zhōng.
Now say <i>It's not at 7 o'clock.</i>	Bú shì qī diǎn zhōng.
Ask <i>At 10 o'clock, OK?</i>	Shí diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?
Do you remember how to say <i>Today?</i>	Jīntiān.
Say <i>Tomorrow.</i>	Míngtiān.
Say <i>Tomorrow evening.</i>	Míngtiān wǎnshang.
Say <i>This evening.</i>	Jīntiān wǎnshang.
Ask the young woman if she is going to eat dinner.	Nǐ yào chī wǎnfàn ma?
And how would you ask <i>Are you going to eat dinner with me?</i>	Nǐ yào gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma?
Answer <i>No.</i>	Bú shì.
Say <i>Today, I would not like to eat anything.</i>	Jīntiān, wǒ bù xiǎng chī dōngxī.
<i>Tomorrow, OK?</i>	Míngtiān, hǎo ma?
Ask <i>At what time?</i>	Jǐ diǎn zhōng? _____
Say <i>At 6 o'clock or at 7 o'clock.</i>	Liù diǎn zhōng huòzhě qī diǎn zhōng.
How would you say <i>As for me, I'm going to eat dinner now.</i>	Wǒ ā, wǒ yào xiànzài chī wǎnfàn.
How does she say <i>I too am going to eat.</i>	Wǒ yě yào chī.
Ask <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
Tell her <i>10 o'clock.</i>	Shí diǎn zhōng.
Say <i>This evening.</i> Pay attention to the tones.	Jīntiān wǎnshang.
Tell her <i>I would like to have dinner with you.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.
Say <i>This evening, I would not like to eat anything.</i>	Jīntiān wǎnshang, wǒ bù xiǎng chī dōngxī.
Say <i>In that case, let's say tomorrow evening.</i>	Nàme, míngtiān wǎnshang ba.

24:00

Xiànzài qǐng nǐ gēn Lǐ Xiānsheng duì huà.

现在请你跟李先生对话。

Now please have a conversation with Mr. Li.

現在請你跟李先生對話。

I'll tell you what to say to him and he'll answer you. Begin by greeting him.

<b>Nǐ:</b> Lǐ Xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo.	你：李先生，你好。
<b>You:</b> Hello, Mr. Li.	你：李先生，你好。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	李先生：你好。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Hello.	李先生：你好。

Try to ask him what he would like to do today.

27:00

<b>Nǐ:</b> Nǐ xiǎng jīntiān zuò shénme?	你：你想今天做什么？
<b>You:</b> What would you like to do today?	你：你想今天做什麼？
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Shénme shíhou? Xiànzài ma?	李先生：什么时候？现在吗？
<b>Mr. Li:</b> When? Today?	李先生：什麼時候？現在嗎？

Ask him what he would like to do this evening.

<b>Nǐ:</b> Nǐ xiǎng jīntián wǎnshang zuò shénme?	你：你想今天晚上做什么？
<b>You:</b> What would you like to do this evening?	你：你想今天晚上做什麼？
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Nǐ ne?	李先生：我不知道。你呢？
<b>Mr. Li:</b> I don't know. How about you?	李先生：我不知道。你呢？

Ask him if he would like to go to your place to drink something?

<b>Nǐ:</b> Nǐ xiǎng qù wǒ nàr hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	你：你想去我那儿喝一点儿东西吗？
<b>You:</b> Would you like to go to my place to drink something?	你：你想去我那兒喝一點兒東西嗎？
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Xiǎng. Kěshì jīntián wǎnshang bù hǎo.	李先生：想。可是今天晚上不好。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Yes. But this evening is not OK.	李先生：想。可是今天晚上不好。

Respond. Then let's say tomorrow evening.

<b>Nǐ:</b> Nàme, míngtiān wǎnshang ba.	你：那么，明天晚上吧。
<b>You:</b> In that case, tomorrow evening then.	你：那麼，明天晚上吧。

He'll ask you a question. Answer him with the time 6 o'clock in your answer.

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ xiǎng jǐ diǎn zhōng chī wǎnfàn?	李先生：你想几点钟吃晚饭？
<b>Mr. Li:</b> What time would you like to eat dinner?	李先生：你想幾點鐘吃晚飯？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Liù diǎn zhōng.	你：六点钟。
<b>You:</b> 6 o'clock.	你：六點鐘。

Use the time 7 o'clock in response to his next question

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Míngtiān ne?	李先生：明天呢？
<b>Mr. Li:</b> Tomorrow?	李先生：明天呢？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Qī diǎn zhōng.	你：七点钟。
<b>You:</b> 7 o'clock.	你：七點鐘。

Use 10 o'clock in your next answer.

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ xiǎng jǐ diǎn zhōng qù wǒ nàr hé yìdiǎnr dōngxī?	<b>李先生:</b> 你想几点钟去我那儿喝一点儿东西?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> What time would you like to go to my place to drink something?	<b>李先生:</b> 你想幾點鐘去我那兒喝一點兒東西?
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shí diǎn zhōng. Wǒ xiǎng shí diǎn zhōng qù nǐ nàr hé dōngxī.	<b>你:</b> 十点钟。我想十点钟去你那儿喝东西。
<b>You:</b> 10 o'clock. I would like to go to your place to drink something at 10 o'clock.	<b>你:</b> 十點鐘。我想十點鐘去你那兒喝東西。

Now he says *See you tomorrow*. Just listen.

<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Míngtiān jiàn.	<b>李先生:</b> 明天见。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> See you tomorrow.	<b>李先生:</b> 明天見。

<b>11.</b>	míngtiān jiàn	明天见	明天見
------------	---------------	-----	-----

This is the end of unit 11.

30:00

## Unit 12

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	How much?	Duōshǎo?	多少	多少
2.	money	qián	钱	錢
3.	People's currency	Rénmínbì	人民币	人民幣
4.	unit/piece	kuài	块	塊
5.	2 (counting)	èr	二	二

## II. Transcript

This is unit 12 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn diànhuà duìhuà. Please listen to this telephone conversation.	请听这段电话对话。 請聽這段電話對話。
Li Ming is Making a call to Ms. Wang. Listen.	
<b>Lǐ Míng:</b> Qǐngwèn, shì Wáng Xiǎojié ma? <b>Li Ming:</b> May I ask, are you Miss Wang?	<b>李明:</b> 请问, 是王小姐吗? <b>李明:</b> 請問, 是王小姐嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì. <b>Miss Wang:</b> Yes. I am.	<b>王小姐:</b> 是。我是。 <b>王小姐:</b> 是。我是。
<b>Lǐ Míng:</b> Wǒ shì Lǐ Míng. Wáng Xiǎojié, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma? <b>Li Ming:</b> I am Li Ming. Miss Wang, this evening would you like to eat dinner along with me?	<b>李明:</b> 我是李明。王小姐, 你今天晚上想跟我一起吃晚饭吗? <b>李明:</b> 我是李明。王小姐, 你今天晚上想跟我一起吃晚飯嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Jīntiān wǎnshang bù hǎo. Míngtiān wǎnshang hǎo ma? <b>Miss Wang:</b> This evening is not good. Is tomorrow evening OK?	<b>王小姐:</b> 今天晚上不好。明天晚上好吗? <b>王小姐:</b> 今天晚上不好。明天晚上好嗎?
<b>Lǐ Míng:</b> Hǎo. Jǐ diǎn zhōng? Qī diǎn zhōng hǎo ma? <b>Li Ming:</b> OK. What time? Is 7 o'clock is OK?	<b>李明:</b> 好。几点钟? 七点钟好吗? <b>李明:</b> 好。幾點鐘? 七點鐘好嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Duìbuqǐ. Qī diǎn zhōng bù xíng. <b>Miss Wang:</b> Sorry. 7 o'clock is impossible.	<b>王小姐:</b> 对不起。七点钟不行。 <b>王小姐:</b> 對不起。七點鐘不行。
<b>Lǐ Míng:</b> Nàme, bā diǎn zhōng hǎo ma? <b>Li Ming:</b> In that case, 8 o'clock OK?	<b>李明:</b> 那么, 八点钟好吗? <b>李明:</b> 那麼, 八點鐘好嗎?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojié:</b> Hǎo. Míngtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn zhōng qù wǒ nàr. <b>Miss Wang:</b> OK. Tomorrow evening at 8 o'clock go to my place.	<b>王小姐:</b> 好。明天晚上八点钟去我那儿。 <b>王小姐:</b> 好。明天晚上八點鐘去我那兒。



Lǐ Míng: Hǎo. Míngtiān jiàn.	李明: 好。明天见。
Li Ming: OK. See you tomorrow.	李明: 好。明天见。
Wáng Xiǎojié: Míngtiān jiàn.	王小姐: 明天见。
Miss Wang: See you tomorrow.	王小姐: 明天见。

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember how to say <i>This evening?</i>	Jīntiān wǎnshang.	
<i>Tomorrow evening.</i>	Míngtiān wǎnshang.	
Say <i>At 6 o'clock.</i>	Liù diǎn zhōng.	
Ask <i>What about later?</i>	Guò yìhuǐ ne?	
Respond <i>In that case, let's say 8 o'clock.</i>	Nàme, bā diǎn zhōng ba.	
Ask <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?	
Tell her that <i>Right now it is 10 o'clock.</i>	Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng.	
Try to ask <i>Is it 10 o'clock?</i>	Shì shí diǎn zhōng ma?	03:00
Did your tone match the speaker's? Try to answer <i>No. It's 10 o'clock.</i>	Bú shì. Bú shì shí diǎn zhōng.	
Ask again <i>What time it is?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?	
Say <i>Now it's 4 o'clock.</i>	Xiànzài shì sì diǎn zhōng.	
Say <i>5 o'clock.</i>	Wǔ diǎn zhōng.	
Say <i>I am going to eat at 5 o'clock.</i>	Wǒ yào wǔ diǎn zhōng chī.	
Ask <i>Are you going to eat at 5 o'clock?</i>	Nǐ yào wǔ diǎn zhōng chī ma?	
How would you answer this question <i>Yes?</i>	Shì.	
Answer <i>Yes. With you.</i>	Shì. Gēn nǐ yìqǐ.	
Tell her this evening you are going to eat supper.	Jīntiān wǎnshang, wǒ yào chī wǎnfàn.	
And now say <i>I would like to eat supper with you.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.	
What word means <i>also</i> or <i>too</i> ?	yě	06:00
Say <i>I too would like to eat.</i>	Hǎo. Wǒ yě xiǎng chī.	

How would you tell her <i>In that case, let's say 7 o'clock?</i>	Nàme, qī diǎn zhōng ba?
Ask <i>Would you like to drink tea?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē chá ma?
Say <i>No. I would like to drink beer.</i>	Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē píjiǔ.
Say <i>Today, I would not like to drink.</i>	Jīntiān, wǒ bù xiǎng hē.
How does she ask you if you would like to drink something?	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?
Say <i>This evening, I would not like to drink.</i>	Jīntiān wǎnshang, wǒ bù xiǎng hē.
Say <i>anything.</i>	dōngxi
Tell her that you would not like to drink anything.	Wǒ bù xiǎng hē dōngxi.
Try to say <i>Today, I would like to eat at 3 o'clock.</i>	Jīntiān, wǒ xiǎng sān diǎn zhōng chī.
Say <i>Or eat at 4 o'clock.</i>	Huòzhě sì diǎn zhōng chī.
Say <i>This evening, I would not like to drink anything.</i>	Jīntiān wǎnshang, wǒ bù xiǎng hē shénme dōngxi.
Now say <i>tomorrow.</i>	míngtiān
Tell her that tomorrow evening you are going to drink something.	Míngtiān wǎnshang, wǒ yào hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Do you remember how to say <i>As for me?</i>	Wǒ ā.
She says <i>As for me, I would like to eat supper now.</i>	Wǒ ā, wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn.
Say <i>OK.</i>	Hǎo.

09:00

Here's how to say *How much?* or *How many?* in Mandarin. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Please repeat.

1.	duōshǎo	多少	多少
◀ This expression is pronounced with a high level tone, followed by a falling/rising tone. Ask <i>How much?</i> Duōshǎo?			
2.	qián	钱	錢
Ask <i>How much money?</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Duōshǎo qián? ▶ The word <i>money</i> is pronounced with a rising tone. Say <i>money</i> . qián			

12:00

Ask *How much money?* Meaning  
*How much does it cost?*

Duōshǎo qián?

Chinese money is called *People's currency*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

3.	Rénmínbì	人民币	人民幣
----	----------	-----	-----

◀ That's two rising tones and a falling tone.  
Say *People's currency*.

Rénmínbì

Ask *How much it costs?*

Duōshǎo qián?

Ask *How much it costs today?* Literally,  
*Today, how much money?*

Jīntiān, duōshǎo qián?

To say *1 Renminbi* you must say literally, *1 unit of People's currency*.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Yī kuài Rénmínbì

4.	kuài	块	塊
----	------	---	---

◀ *Unit* is pronounced with a falling tone.  
Say *unit*.

kuài

Try to say *1 unit*.

yī kuài

Say *1 Renminbi* or *1 unit of People's currency*.

yī kuài Rénmínbì.

Ask *How much it costs?*

Duōshǎo qián?

Try to answer *8 Renminbi*.

Bā kuài Rénmínbì.

15:00

Here's the number *11* in Mandarin.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

shí yī

What is the number *11* made of? *10, 1*.

◀ Say again *11* using rising and high level tones

shí yī

Ask *How much?*

Duōshǎo?

And now ask how much money you owe.

Duōshǎo qián?

Say *11 Renminbi*.

shí yī kuài Rénmínbì

Here's the number *12* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō).

shí èr

5.	èr	二	二
----	----	---	---

◀ *12* has first a rising and then a falling tone.  
Say again *12*.

shí èr

What part of that means *2*?

èr

Now say *Two cups of beer*.

Liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

两 (liǎng) is used to say *two* of something.

Say again 12.	shí èr	
You use 二 (èr) to say this. This is also the number 2 used for counting or mathematics. Say 12 Renminbi.	shí èr kuài Rénmínbì	
Now say 11 Renminbi.	shí yī kuài Rénmínbì	
Say 1 Renminbi.	yī kuài Rénmínbì	
		18:00
Say again 12.	shí èr	
Say 12 Renminbi.	shí èr kuài Rénmínbì	
Try to say 13 Renminbi.	shí sān kuài Rénmínbì	
◀ Say again 13 using rising and high level tones.	shí sān	
Ask <i>How much it costs?</i>	Duōshǎo qián?	
Answer 12 Renminbi.	shí èr kuài Rénmínbì	
Answer 13 Renminbi.	shí sān kuài Rénmínbì	
11 Renminbi.	shí yī kuài Rénmínbì	
Say 10 Renminbi.	shí kuài Rénmínbì	
Say 2 Renminbi.	liǎng kuài Rénmínbì	
And what's the Mandarin number 12?	shí èr	
Say again 10 Renminbi.	shí kuài Rénmínbì	
		21:00
Say 8 Renminbi.	bā kuài Rénmínbì	
Say 6 Renminbi.	liù kuài Rénmínbì	
And how would you ask <i>How much money?</i>	Duōshǎo qián?	
Say 6.	liù	
Ask <i>Is it 5 Renminbi?</i>	Shì wǔ kuài Rénmínbì ma?	
Say <i>No. It's 4 Renminbi.</i>	Bú shì. Shì sì kuài Rénmínbì.	
Now say 7 Renminbi.	qī kuài Rénmínbì	
How would you ask <i>Is it 13 Renminbi?</i>	Shì shí sān kuài Rénmínbì ma?	

Did your tone sound like the speakers? Say  
*No. It's not 13.*

Bú shì. Bú shì shí sān.

Ask *Is it 12 units?*

Shì shí èr kuài ma?

Try to say *No. It's 11 Renminbi.*

Bù shì. Shì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

24:00

Ask *Do you understand?*

Nǐ míngbai ma?

How would you answer *Yes. I understand.*

Míngbai. Wǒ míngbai.

Do you remember how to say *1 Renminbi?*

yī kuài Rénmínbì

(Xiànzài qǐng tīng)	现在请听	現在請聽
What did I just ask you to do? I asked you to <i>Please listen now.</i>		

The young man is going to propose various things you can do together. You will contradict him every time.

Xiànzài qǐng tīng ránhòu huídá wèntí.	现在请听然后回答问题。
Now please listen and then answer the questions.	現在請聽然後回答問題。

(Xiànzài qǐng tīng ránhòu huídá wèntí.)

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	男人：你好。你想跟我一起吃一点儿东西吗？
<b>Man:</b> Hello. Would you like to eat something together with me?	男人：你好。你想跟我一起吃一點兒東西嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Wǒ bù xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ bù xiǎng chī dōngxi.	你：我不想。谢谢你。我不想吃东西。
<b>You:</b> No. Thank you. I would not like to eat something.	你：我不想。謝謝你。我不想吃東西。
<b>Nǚ:</b> Wǒ ā, Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	你：我啊。我想喝一点儿东西。
<b>You:</b> As for me, I would like to drink something.	你：我啊。我想喝一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá ma?	男人：你想喝一点儿茶吗？
<b>Man:</b> Would you like to drink some tea?	男人：你想喝一點兒茶嗎？

Answer *No* and tell him that you would like to drink some beer.

Nǚ: Bù xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr pìjiǔ.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Hǎo. Shénme shíhou? Jīntiān hǎo ma?	男人：好。什么时候？今天好吗？
<b>Man:</b> OK. What time? Is today OK?	男人：好。什麼時候？今天好嗎？

Tell him *Not OK. Let's say tomorrow?*

Nǚ: Bù hǎo. Míngtiān ba?

<b>Nánrén:</b> Jīntiān wǎnshàng ne?	男人：今天晚上呢？
<b>Man:</b> Tomorrow evening then?	男人：今天晚上呢？

*This evening is not OK. Let's say tomorrow evening.*

Nǚ: Jīntiān wǎnshang bù hǎo. Míngtiān wǎnshang ba.

27:00

Nánrén: Jǐ diǎn zhōng? Wǔ diǎn zhōng hǎo ma?

男人: 几点钟? 五点钟好吗?

Man: What time? Is 5 o'clock OK?

男人: 幾點鐘? 五點鐘好嗎?

*Say 5 o'clock is not OK. Let's say 6 o'clock.*

Nǚ: Wǔ diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Liù diǎn zhōng ba?

Nánrén: Bù hǎo. Qī diǎn zhōng ba?

男人: 不好。七点钟吧?

Man: Not OK. How about 7 o'clock?

男人: 不好。七點鐘吧?

Tell him that  
*7 o'clock is not OK. Suggest 8 o'clock.*

Nǚ: Qī diǎn zhōng bù hǎo. Bā diǎn zhōng ba?

Nánrén: Hǎo. Míngtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn zhōng. Zàijiàn.

男人: 好。明天晚上八点钟。在见。

Man: OK. Tomorrow evening at 8 o'clock. Goodbye.

男人: 好。明天晚上八點鐘。再見。

Now you'll have a conversation with a saleswoman at the store. You made some purchases and you're disagreeing with her about the price. Begin by asking her how much money it is.

Nǚ: Duōshǎo qián?

Nǚrén: Shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.

女人: 十三块人民币。

Woman: 13 Renminbi.

女人: 十三塊人民幣。

*Say No. It's 12 Renminbi.*

Nǚ: Bú shì. Shì shí èr kuài Rénmínbì.

Nǚrén: Bú shì. Shì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

女人: 不是。是十一块人民币。

Woman: No. It's 11 Renminbi.

女人: 不是。是十一塊人民幣。

*It's not 11 units it's 10 units.*

Nǚ: Bú shì shí yī kuài. Shì shí kuài.

Nǚrén: Shí kuài bù xíng. Bā kuài Rénmínbì hǎo ma?

女人: 十块不行。八块人民币好吗?

Woman: 10 is impossible. 8 Renminbi OK?

女人: 十塊不行。八塊人民幣好嗎?

Tell her's *It's not OK. Ask if 7 Renminbi are OK.*

Nǚ: Bù hǎo. Qī kuài Rénmínbì hǎo ma?

Nǚrén: Nàme, qī kuài Rénmínbì ba. Zàijiàn.

女人: 那么, 七块人民币吧。再见。

Woman: In that case, 7 Renminbi then. Goodbye.

女人: 那麼, 七塊人民幣吧。再見。

This is the end of unit 12.

30:00

## Unit 13

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	have	yǒu	有	有
2.	American dollars	měijīn	美金	美金
3.	don't have	méiyǒu	没有	沒有
4.	plus/add	jiā	加	加
5.	here you are	nò	讷	訥

## II. Transcript

This is unit 13 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn diànhuà duìhuà. Please listen to this telephone conversation.	請聽這段電話對話。 請聽這段電話對話。
Mr. Li is speaking with Miss Wang. (qǐng tīng)	
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Wáng Xiǎojie, nǐ hǎo. Mr. Li: Hello, Miss Wang.	李先生: 王小姐, 你好。 李先生: 王小姐, 你好。
Wáng Xiǎojie: Lǐ Xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo. Miss Wang: Hello, Mr. Li.	王小姐: 李先生, 你好。 王小姐: 李先生, 你好。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Wáng Xiǎojie, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang xiǎng zuò shénme? Mr. Li: Miss Wang, what are you doing this evening?	李先生: 王小姐, 你今天晚上想做什么? 李先生: 王小姐, 你今天晚上想做什麼?
Wáng Xiǎojie: Jīntiān wǎnshang? Wǒ bù zhīdao. Miss Wang: This evening? I don't know.	王小姐: 今天晚上? 我不知道。 王小姐: 今天晚上? 我不知道。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Wǒ xiǎng liù diǎn zhōng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn, hǎo ma? Mr. Li: I would like to eat dinner with you at 6 o'clock, OK?	李先生: 我想六点钟跟你一起吃晚饭, 好吗? 李先生: 我想六點鐘跟你一起吃晚飯, 好嗎?
Wáng Xiǎojie: Bù hǎo. Wǒ liù diǎn zhòng yào gēn Chén Xiǎojie yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn. Miss Wang: Not OK. I am going to eat dinner with Miss Chen at 6 o'clock.	王小姐: 不好。我六点钟要跟陈小姐一起吃晚饭。 王小姐: 不好。我六點鐘要跟陳小姐一起吃晚飯。
Lǐ Xiānsheng: Nàme, nǐ xiǎng jīntiān wǎnshang hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma? Mr. Li: In that case, would you like to drink something this evening?	李先生: 那么, 你想今天晚上喝一点儿东西吗? 李先生: 那麼, 你想今天晚上喝一點兒東西嗎?
Wáng Xiǎojie: Hǎo, kěshì wǒ xiǎng qù 王小姐: 好, 可是我想去北京饭店喝。	

Běijīng fàndiàn hē.	
<b>Miss Wang:</b> OK, but I would like to go to the Beijing Restaurant to drink.	王小姐: 好, 可是我想去北京飯店喝。
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo. Jǐ diǎn zhōng?	李先生: 好。几点钟?
<b>Mr. Li:</b> OK. At what time?	李先生: 好。幾點鐘?
<b>Wáng Xiǎojiè:</b> Qī diǎn zhōng huòzhě shí diǎn zhōng, hǎo ma?	王小姐: 七点钟或者十点钟, 好吗?
<b>Miss Wang:</b> 7 o'clock or 10 o'clock OK?	王小姐: 七點鐘或者十點鐘, 好嗎?
<b>Lǐ Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo. Shí diǎn zhōng zài nǐ nàr. Zàijiàn.	李先生: 好。十点钟在你那儿。再见。
<b>Mr. Li:</b> OK. 10 o'clock at your place. Goodbye.	李先生: 好。十點鐘在你那兒。再見。

You just heard the woman say Wǒ liù diǎn zhōng gēn Chén xiǎojiè yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.  
Or *I'm going to eat dinner with Miss Chen at 6 o'clock.*

Zài tīng yí cì.	再听一次。
Listen again.	再聽一次。

(the conversation above is repeated)

Ask me what time it is.

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?

Tell me *It's 11 o'clock.*

Xiànzài shí yī diǎn zhōng.

Say *It's 8 o'clock.*

Xiànzài bā diǎn zhōng.

How would you ask *How much?*

Duōshǎo?

Now ask *How much money?*

Duōshǎo qián? \_\_\_\_\_

03:00

Say *13 Renminbi.*

Shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.

Say *It's 12 units.*

Shì shí èr kuài.

How would you ask *2 units or 12 units?*

Liǎng kuài háishì shé èr kuài?

Say *I don't understand what you're saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

How does she ask if you would like to eat supper with her?

Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma?

Did your tones sound like the speakers?  
Ask this again.

Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma?

Ask *When? Is it today?*

Shénme shíhou? Shì jīntiān ma?

Ask *Or tomorrow?*

Háishì míngtiān?

Say *This evening.*

Jīntiān wǎnshang.

Say *Tomorrow evening.*

Míngtiān wǎnshang.



Ask *At what time?* Jǐ diǎn zhōng? \_\_\_\_\_ 06:00

Say *At six o'clock or at seven o'clock.* Liù diǎn zhōng huòzhě qī diǎn zhōng.

Do you remember how to say *Impossible?* Bù xíng.

Say *Tomorrow evening, impossible.* Míngtiān wǎnshang, bù xíng.

Do you remember how to say *Hello* in Mandarin? Nǐ hǎo.

Now say *Goodbye.* Zàijiàn.

And how would you ask a good friend how she is? Nǐ hǎo ma?

*Very well, thank you.* Hěn hǎo, xièxie nǐ.

Do you remember how to ask *How much* or *How many?* Duōshǎo?

*How many Renminbi do you have?* Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

1.	yǒu	有	有
----	-----	---	---

◆ *Have* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone. Say *You have.* Nǐ yǒu.

Try to ask *How many Renminbi?* Duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

You don't need to use the word *units* when you ask how many. Now ask *How many Renminbi do you have?* Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

09:00

What's the Mandarin number *11*? shí yī

Try to tell her that *you have 14 Renminbi.* Wǒ yǒu shí sì kuài Rénmínbì.

What's the number *14* in Mandarin? shí sì

Ask me how many Renminbi I have. Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

*How many American dollars do you have?* Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo měijīn?

2.	měijīn	美金	美金
----	--------	----	----

◆ American dollars is pronounced with a rising/falling tone followed by a high level tone. Listen again and repeat. měijīn

Ask me *How many American dollars I have?* Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo měijīn?

Try to say *I have 14 American dollars* or *14* Wǒ yǒu shí sì kuài měijīn.

units US currency.

And now say *5 American dollars*.

Wǔ kuài měijīn.

12:00

Try to say *I have 15 American dollars*.

Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài měijīn.

Ask how many Renminbi I have.

Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

Say *I have 15 Renminbi*.

Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.

Now say *I have 14 American dollars*.

Wǒ yǒu shí sì kuài měijīn.

Try to ask *Do you have?*

Nǐ yǒu ma?

You could also ask this another way.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

3. Méiyǒu

没有

沒有

Literally, *You have/Don't have*.

Try to say *Don't have*.

Méiyǒu

◀ In this case the 没(měi) is pronounced with a rising tone is what makes that negative.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *Do you have?*

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu.

This is another common way to ask questions in Mandarin. Using it, ask *Do you have?*

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?

Ask *Do you have 7 Renminbi?*

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qī kuài Rénmínbì?

15:00

Now ask me if I have 6 Renminbi.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu liù kuài Rénmínbì?

Try to ask if I have 16 Renminbi.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shí liù kuài Rénmínbì?

◀ 16 is pronounced with rising and falling tones. Say it again.

shí liù

Try to say *I have 13 Renminbi*.

Wǒ yǒu shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.

Now say *I have 15 American dollars*.

Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài měijīn.

Ask me if I have 16 American dollars.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shí liù kuài měijīn.

How would you answer this question *no?*

Méiyǒu.

Ask the saleswoman *How much money?*

Duōshǎo qián?

She says *15 Renminbi*.

Shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.

Try to ask *What about American dollars?*

Měijīn ne?

18:00

Say <i>I have 10 American dollars.</i>	Wǒ yǒu shí kuài měijīn.
Ask <i>Do you have?</i> Use the positive/negative question form.	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?
<i>Do you have 5 American dollars?</i>	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu wǔ kuài měijīn?
Ask how much money it is.	Duōshǎo qián?
Say <i>15 Renminbi.</i>	Shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.
Ask again <i>What about American dollars?</i>	Měijīn ne?
Say <i>5 American dollars.</i>	Wǔ kuài měijīn.
Try to say <i>I don't have 16 Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ méiyǒu shí liù kuài Rénmínbì.
Say <i>I have 14 Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ yǒu shí sì kuài Rénmínbì.
Say <i>I don't have 15.</i> Say literally, <i>15 units.</i>	Wǒ méiyǒu shí wǔ kuài.
Try to say <i>In that case, let's say 14 Renminbi.</i>	Nàme, shí sì kuài Rénmínbì ba?
Say <i>Thank you. Goodbye.</i>	Xièxie nǐ. Zàijiàn.
Now let's have a discussion with the saleswoman again. Ask her how much money you owe.	Duōshǎo qián?
How does she tell you <i>11 Renminbi?</i>	Shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

21:00

Here's the Mandarin word for *plus*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

4.	jiā	加	加
----	-----	---	---

◀ Did you hear the high level tone?

Try to say *11 plus 1.* Shí yī jiā yī.

Now the saleswoman is going to add one or two renminbi to the price. Everytime she says a number you add it on and say the total.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shí yī kuài Rénmínbì jiā yī kuài.	女人: 十一块人民币加一块。
<b>Woman:</b> 11 Renminbi plus 1 unit.	女人: 十一塊人民幣加一塊。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shí èr kuài. Shí èr kuài Renminbi.	你: 十二块。十二块人民币。
<b>You:</b> 12 units. 12 Renminbi.	你: 十二塊。十二塊人民幣。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shí èr kuài jiā liǎng kuài.	女人: 十二块加二块。
<b>Woman:</b> 12 units plus 2 unit.	女人: 十二塊加二塊。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shí sì kuài.	你: 十四块。
<b>You:</b> 14 units.	你: 十四塊。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shí sì kuài jiā yī kuài Rénmínbì.	女人: 十四块加一块人民币。
<b>Woman:</b> 14 Renminbi plus 1 Renminbi.	女人: 十四塊加一塊人民幣。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shí wǔ kuài. Shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.	你: 十五块。十五块人民币。

<b>You:</b> 15 units. 15 Renminbi.	你：十五塊。十五塊人民幣。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì jiā yī kuài.	女人：十五塊人民幣加一塊。
<b>Woman:</b> 15 Renminbi plus 1 unit.	女人：十五塊人民幣加一塊。
<b>Nǚ:</b> Shí liù kuài. Shí liù kuài Rénmínbì.	你：十六塊。十六塊人民幣。
<b>You:</b> 16 units. 16 Renminbi.	你：十六塊。十六塊人民幣。

How does she ask you if you have 16 Renminbi?

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shí liù kuài Rénmínbì?

Tell her you don't have any Renminbi. *Any* is understood.

Wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

24:00

Ask *What about American dollars? How much money?*

Měijīn ne? Duōshǎo qián?

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo měijīn?

女人：你有多少美金？

**Woman:** How much American dollars do you have?

女人：你有多少美金？

Tell her you have 15 American dollars.

Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài měijīn.

How does she say  
*In that case, 10 American dollars?*

Nàme, shí kuài měijīn ba.

*Here you are 10 American dollars.*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nò. Shí kuài měijīn.

5.	nò	讷	訥
----	----	---	---

◀ The Mandarin word that means *here you are* is pronounced with a high falling tone.<sup>1</sup>

Say *Here you are 10 American dollars.*

Nò. Shí kuài měijīn.

Now imagine that you're in a restaurant in Beijing. You're going to speak to the waiter. Respond to what he says to you.

**Fúwùyuán:** Nǐ hǎo.

**Nǚ:** Nǐ hǎo.

Listen to how he ask *Would you like?*

**Fúwùyuán:** Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng?

Using this form he asks  
*Would you like to eat something?*

**Fúwùyuán:** Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

*Yes. I would like to eat supper.*

**Nǚ:** Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng chī wǎnfàn.

**Fúwùyuán:** Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?

服务员：你想喝什么？

**Waiter:** What would you like to drink?

服務員：你想喝什麼？

27:00

Tell him that you'd like to order one beer.

Wǒ xiǎng yào yī bēi bǐjiǔ.

**Fúwùyuán:** Nǐ xiǎng yào yī bēi háishì liǎng bēi?

服务员：你想要一杯还是两杯？

<sup>1</sup> 讷 (nò) is considered very informal. Avoid using it in a business situation.

<b>Waiter:</b> Would you like one glass or two glasses?	<b>服務員:</b> 你想要一杯還是兩杯?
Tell him you don't understand.	<b>Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.</b>
<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Nǐ xiǎng yào yī bēi háishì liǎng bēi?	<b>服務員:</b> 你想要一杯還是兩杯?
<b>Waiter:</b> Would you like one glass or two glasses?	<b>服務員:</b> 你想要一杯還是兩杯?
<b>Nǐ:</b> Yī bēi. Wǒ xiǎng yào yī bēi píjiǔ.	<b>你:</b> 一杯。我想要一杯啤酒。
<b>You:</b> One glass. I would like one glass of beer.	<b>你:</b> 一杯。我想要義被啤酒。
How does he say <i>OK. Here you are. One beer?</i>	<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Yī bēi píjiǔ.
Ask him how much money it is?	<b>Nǐ:</b> Duōshǎo qián?
<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Shí èr kuài Rénmínbì.	<b>服務員:</b> 十二塊人民幣。
<b>Waiter:</b> 12 Renminbi.	<b>服務員:</b> 十二塊人民幣。
How does he ask if you have any Renminbi?	<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Nǐ yǒu Rénmínbì ma? <b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì?
Tell him that you have 15 Renminbi.	<b>Nǐ:</b> Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.
Tell him that you would like to order one beer.	<b>Nǐ:</b> Wǒ xiǎng yào yī bēi píjiǔ.
<i>OK. Here you are. One beer.</i>	<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Yī bēi píjiǔ.
<b>Nǐ:</b> Xièxie nǐ.	<b>你:</b> 謝謝你。
<b>You:</b> Thank you.	<b>你:</b> 謝謝你。

This is the end of unit 13.

30:00

## Unit 14

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	newspaper	bàozhǐ	报纸	報紙
2.	much	duō	多	多
3.	little (in quantity)	shǎo	少	少
4.	give, to	gěi	给	給
5.	don't mention it	búkèqì	不客气	不客氣

## II. Transcript

This is unit 14 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn pǔtōnghuà duìhuà 请听这段普通话对话。

Please listen to this Mandarin conversation. 請聽這段普通話對話。

Mr. Jones wants to buy *an American newspaper*. (Měiguó bàozhǐ)

1.	bàozhǐ	报纸	報紙
<i>An American newspaper.</i>		Měiguó bàozhǐ	

He's speaking with the saleswoman. Listen.

<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Qǐngwen? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Měiguó bàozhǐ?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 请问? 你有没有美国报纸?
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> May I ask? Do you have American newspapers?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 請問? 你有没有美國報紙?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yǒu. Nò.	<b>女人:</b> 有。訥。
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. Here your are.	<b>女人:</b> 有。訥。
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Duōshǎo qián?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 多少钱?
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> How much money?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 多少錢?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bā kuài Rénmínbì.	<b>女人:</b> 八块人民币。
<b>Woman:</b> 8 Renminbi.	<b>女人:</b> 八塊人民幣。
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Shì bú shì shí bā kuài Rénmínbì?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 是不是十八块人民币?
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> Is it 18 Renminbi?	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 是不是十八塊人民幣?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú shì. Shí bā kuài. Shì bā kuài.	<b>女人:</b> 不是十八块。十八块。
<b>Woman:</b> No. It's 8 Renminbi.	<b>女人:</b> 不是十八快。十八快。
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Xièxie nǐ. Nò. bā kuài Rénmínbì	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 谢谢你。訥。八块人民币。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> Thank you. Here. 8 Renminbi.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 謝謝你。訥。八塊人民幣。

You just heard the man ask *Is it 18 Renminbi?* Shì bú shì shí bā kuài Rénmínbì?

(zài tīng yíci) Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Supposed that you are handing someone some money to pay for a purchase. What word would you use to accompany the gesture of handing the money to him?

Nò.

Try to say *Here you are. 13 Renminbi.*

Nò. Shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.

Do you remember how to say  
*I would like to order two beers?*

Wǒ xiǎng yào liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

This literally means *I would like to want.* With that in mind, try to say *I want.*

Wǒ yào.

Try to say *I want 12 Renminbi.*

Wǒ yào shí èr kuài Rénmínbì.

Say the number 12.

shí èr

What part of that is the number 2 used in mathematics?

èr

---

03:00

And now say again *two beers.*

liǎng bēi píjiǔ

Say *I would like to buy something.*

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxì.

*Here you are 14 Renminbi.*

Nò. Shí sì kuài Rénmínbì.

Do you remember how to ask *Do you have?*

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu?

Ask *Do you have one Renminbi?*

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu yī kuài Rénmínbì?

Now say *I don't have any Renminbi.* Any is understood.

Wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

Try to say *I don't want any Renminbi.* Use 不 (bù).

Wǒ bú yào Rénmínbì.

Here's how to ask *Do you want?* Using the positive/negative form.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ yào bú yào.

Ask *Do you want one Renminbi?*

Nǐ yào bú yào yī kuài Rénmínbì?

We'll use this form to ask yes/no questions throughout this unit.

Ask again *Do you want?*

Nǐ yào bú yào?

---

06:00

Ask me if I want 1 Renminbi.

Nǐ yào bú yào yī kuài Rénmínbì?

Tell me that you don't want 1 Renminbi.

Wǒ bú yào yī kuài Rénmínbì.

Ask me if I want 11 Renminbi.

Nǐ yào bú yào shí yī kuài Rénmínbì?

Now say 12.

shí èr

Ask *Do you want 13 Renminbi?*

Nǐ yào bú yào shí sān kuài Rénmínbì?

Say *I want 16 Renminbi.*

Wǒ yào shí liù kuài Rénmínbì.

Say *It's not 15 units.*

Bú shì shí wǔ kuài.

Do you remember how to ask *How much?*

Duōshǎo?

2.	duō	多	多
3.	shǎo	少	少

You're actually asking *Much/little?*  
Meaning *much or a little?* Try to say *much.*

duō

◀ Note the high level tone. Ask again.  
*How much?*

Duōshǎo?

Now ask *How much money it is?*

Duōshǎo qián? \_\_\_\_\_

09:00

Ask *How many American dollars you have?*

Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo měijīn?

Try to answer *I don't have American dollars.*

Wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.

Do you remember the Mandarin word that means *very*?

hěn

*I have a lot of Renminbi.*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō Rénmínbì.  
Wǒ yǒu hén duō Rénmínbì.

◀ Say *a lot of* or *very much* using rising and high level tones.

hěn duō

Say *I have a lot of Renminbi.*

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō Rénmínbì.

Say *But I don't have any American dollars.*

Kěshì wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.

Ask me if I want American dollars.

Nǐ yào bú yào měijīn?

Answer this question *No.*

Bú yào.

Say *You're not American.*

Nǐ bú shì Měiguó rén.

Say *I am American.*

Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Do you remember how to say *a little* or *some*?

yìdiǎnr \_\_\_\_\_

12:00

Say *I have some Renminbi.*

Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

As with *money* you don't need the word for *units* when you say *some.*

Tell me that you have some American dollars. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr měijīn.

Tell me that you have a lot of American dollars. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō měijīn.



Now say *But I don't have any Renminbi.* Kěshì wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

*Give me some Renminbi. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)* Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

4.	gěi	给	给
----	-----	---	---

◀ *Give* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Say *Give me.* Gěi wǒ.

Ask me to give you some American dollars. Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr měijīn.

Try to say  
*OK. Here you are. 3 American dollars.* Hǎo. Nò. Sān kuài měijīn.

Tell her that you don't have any Renminbi. Wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

Ask her if she has Renminbi. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì?

15:00

How does she say *I have a lot of Renminbi?* Wǒ yǒu hěnduō Rénmínbì.

Try to say *17, 10, 7.* shí qī

The tones are rising and high level. Say  
*I have 17 Renminbi.* Wǒ yǒu shí qī kuài Rénmínbì.

Try to say *18.* shí bā

Now try to say *19.* shí jiǔ

Say *I have 19 American dollars.* Wǒ yǒu shí jiǔ kuài měijīn.

How does she tell you that she has a lot of Renminbi? Wǒ yǒu hěnduō Rénmínbì.

Ask her how much Renminbi she has. Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

Say *18 units.* shí bā kuài

Try to say *17 units.* shí qī kuài

Using the positive/negative form, ask me if I want dollars. Nǐ yào bú yào měijīn?

18:00

Answer *No.* Bú yào.

Say *Give me.* Gěi wǒ.

*Give me one Renminbi.* Gěi wǒ yī kuài Rénmínbì.

Say *I don't have any beer.* Wǒ méiyǒu píjiǔ.

Say that you would like to order some beer. Wǒ xiǎng yào yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

And now say *I would like to buy some beer.* Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

Again say *I don't have any beer.* Wǒ méiyǒu píjiǔ.

*As for me, I have some beer.* Wǒ ā, wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

She points to one. How does she say  
*Here you are. One beer?* Nò. Yī bēi píjiǔ.

Say *Give me 17 Renminbi.* Gěi wǒ shí qī kuài Rénmínbì.

Tell her that you want some tea. Wǒ yào yìdiǎnr chá.

21:00

And how would you say  
*I would like to order some tea?* Wǒ xiǎng yào yìdiǎnr chá.

How do you say 16? shí liù

14 shí sì

18 shí bā

11 shí yī

15 shí wǔ

19 shí jiǔ

13 shí sān

17 shí qī

Ask me if I have American dollars. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu měijīn?

Answer *No. I don't have American dollars.* Méiyǒu. Wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.

Try to ask *What about Renminbi?* Rénmínbì ne?

Say *a lot or very much.* hěn duō

And how would you ask *How much?* Duōshǎo?

*How much money?* Duōshǎo qián?

Say *19 units.* shí jiǔ kuài

Try to say *It isn't very much.* Bú shì hěn duō.

Now let's review how to ask for directions.

24:00

Say *Excuse me. Please let me ask.* Duìbuqǐ. Qíng wèn.

Remembering the word order, ask *Where is Long Peace Street?* Cháng Ān Jiē zài nàr?

Using the positive/negative form ask *Is it over there?* Shí bu shì zài nàr?

Ask *Or located here?* Háishì zài zhèr?

How would she say *Over there?* Zài nàr.

Say *Thank you.* Xièxie nǐ.

The woman answers *Don't mention it.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	búkèqì	不客气	不客氣
----	--------	-----	-----

◀ The tone first rises and then falls twice.

Say *Don't mention it.* Búkèqì.

An American woman is talking with her husband. They are in Beijing. How does she say *I'm going to buy something?* Wǒ yào mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Say *Give me 15 American dollars.* Gěi wǒ shí wǔ kuài měijīn.

27:00

Try to say *Give me 17 or 18 American dollars.* Gěi wǒ shí qī huòzhě shí bā kuài měijīn.

How does she ask him if he has any Renminbi? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì?

He says no, he doesn't have any Renminbi. Méiyǒu. Wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

Say *I have a lot of American dollars.* Wǒ yǒu hěn duō měijīn.

*But I don't have any Renminbi.* Kěshì wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.

Ask her how many Renminbi she wants. Nǐ yào duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

Say *18 or 19 units.* Shí bā huòzhě shí jiǔ kuài.

How does she ask you to give her 19 units. Gěi wǒ shí jiǔ kuài.

How does he say *I give* or *I'm giving*. Wǒ gěi.

Now try to say *I'm giving you 10 American dollars.* Wǒ gěi nǐ shí kuài měijīn.

How does she *Thank you?* Xièxie nǐ.

Respond *Don't mention it.* Búkèqì.

This is the end of unit 14.

30:00

## Unit 15

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	see you later	yì huǐ jiàn	一会儿见	一會兒見
2.	for you	gěi nǐ de	给你的	給你的
3.	can/able to	kěyǐ	可以	可以

## II. Transcript

This is unit 15 of Pimsleur's Mandarin I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn Carter Xiānsheng gēn Carter Tàitai de duìhuà.	请听这段 Carter 先生 和 Carter 太太的对话。
Please listen to this conversation between Mr. and Mrs. Carter.	請聽這段 Carter 先生 和 Carter 太太的對話。

At the beginning of the conversation you will hear the woman say yì huǐ jiàn or *see you later*.

1.	yì huǐ jiàn	一会儿见	一會兒見
----	-------------	------	------

(qǐng tīng)

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yì huǐ jiàn.	女人: 一会儿见。
<b>Woman:</b> See you later.	女人: 一會兒見。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Yì huǐ jiàn? Nǐ qù nǎr?	男人: 一会儿见? 你去哪儿?
<b>Man:</b> See you later? Where are you going?	男人: 一會兒見? 你去哪兒?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ yào mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	女人: 我要买一点儿东西。
<b>Woman:</b> I want to buy something.	女人: 我要買一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Kěshì nǐ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.	男人: 可是你没有人民币。
<b>Man:</b> But you don't have any Renminbi.	男人: 可是你沒有人民幣。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.	女人: 有。我有一点儿人民币。
<b>Woman:</b> I have some Renminbi.	女人: 有。我有一點兒人民幣。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?	男人: 你有多少人民币?
<b>Man:</b> How much Renminbi do you have?	男人: 你有多少人民幣?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Shí sì kuài huòzhě shí wǔ kuài.	女人: 我不知道。是十四块或者十五块。
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know. 14 units or 15 units.	女人: 我不知道。是十四快或者是五塊。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ gěi nǐ yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Nò, Shí jiǔ kuài Rénmínbì. Xiànzài nǐ yǒu duōshǎo qián?	男人: 我给你一点儿人民币。呐。十九块人民币。现在你有多少钱?
<b>Man:</b> I'll give you some Renminbi. Here you go. 14 Renminbi. Now you have how much money?	男人: 我給你一點兒人民幣。訥。十九塊人民幣。現在你有多少錢?

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ xiànzài yǒu hěnduō qián. Xièxiè nǐ.	女人：我现在有很多钱。谢谢你。
<b>Woman:</b> I now have a lot of money. Thank you.	女人：我現在有很多錢。謝謝你。
Do you remember how to say <i>Give me some Renminbi?</i>	Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.
Supposed you didn't understand what was said. Try to ask <i>What did you say?</i> Literally, <i>You speak what?</i>	Nǐ shuō shénme?
Using the positive/negative form, ask the man if he has any American dollars.	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu měijīn?
Ask him if he has any tea.	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chá?
How does he tell you that he does not have any tea?	Wǒ méiyǒu chá.
Say <i>But I have beer.</i>	Kěshì wǒ yǒu píjiǔ.
Try to say <i>In that case, let's say one beer.</i>	Nàme, yī bēi píjiǔ ba.
How does she say <i>Here you are. One beer?</i>	Nò. Yī bēi píjiǔ.
Say <i>Give me 5 American dollars.</i>	Gěi wǒ wǔ kuài měijīn.
And how would you say <i>I'm giving you 5 American dollars.</i>	Wǒ gěi nǐ wǔ kuài měijīn.
Ask <i>Do you have any Renminbi?</i>	Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì?
Answer <i>Yes. I have Renminbi.</i>	Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu Rénmínbì.
And now say <i>I have a lot of Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ yǒu hěnduō Rénmínbì.
Say <i>Give me 17 Renminbi.</i>	Gěi wǒ shí qī kuài Rénmínbì.
Ask <i>How many? Is it 18 units?</i>	Duōshǎo? Shì bú shì shí bā kuài?
Answer <i>No.</i>	Bú shì.
Say <i>It's 16 units.</i>	Shì shí liù kuài.
<i>Here you are. 15 Renminbi.</i>	Nò. Shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.
Say <i>It's 14 units.</i>	Shì shí sì kuài.
Say <i>In that case, give me one Renminbi.</i>	Nàme, gěi wǒ yī kuài Rénmínbì.
Ask how much money it costs.	Duōshǎo qián?

03:00

06:00

Say *It's not a lot or It's not very much.*      Bù shí hěn duō.

Here's how to say *for you.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

2.	gěi nǐ de	给你的	给你的
----	-----------	-----	-----

You're saying something like give to you.

◀ The tones are rising, falling/ralling and falling.

Say again *for you.*      gěi nǐ de

The 的(de) with the falling tone has no literal meaning in English but you need it to say *for.*

Try to say *The tea is for you.*      Chá shì gěi nǐ de.

Now try to say *for me.*      Gěi wǒ de.

And now say *But the beer is for me.*      Kěshì píjiǔ shì gěi wǒ de.

Ask how much money it is.      Duōshǎo qián? \_\_\_\_\_

09:00

Say *18 units or 19 units.*      Shí bā kuài huòzhě shí jiǔ kuài.

You want to ask *How much is one beer? Ask One beer, how much money?*      Yī bēi píjiǔ duōshǎo qián?

Say *1 Renminbi, 1 cup.* Obviously one cup of beer will cost more than 1 Renminbi but for this exercise, *1 Renminbi, 1 cup.*      Yī kuài Rénmínbì, yī bēi.

Now say *The tea, 2 units.*      Chá, liǎng kuài.

Say *Give me three Renminbi.*      Gěi wǒ sān kuài Rénmínbì.

Here's how to say *I can't*      Wǒ bù kěyǐ.

3.	kěyǐ	可以	可以
----	------	----	----

Say *I can't.*      Wǒ bù kěyǐ.

Now try to say *I can.*      Wǒ kěyǐ.

◀ 可以(kěyǐ) is pronounced with a rising tone, followed by a falling/rising tone.

Say again *I can.*      Wǒ kěyǐ. \_\_\_\_\_

12:00

What other Mandarin word means can? 会(huì) is used to say *can speak* (会说/huì shuō).

Literally, that means *know how to*, while 可以(kěyǐ) means *able to*.

Say again *I can, meaning I am able to.*      Wǒ kěyǐ.

Now say *You can.*      Nǐ kěyǐ.

And now try to say *You can't.*      Nǐ bù kěyǐ.

You want to ask *Can you?*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ kěyǐ ma?  
Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?

Notice the short form used in the first part of that question. Ask again *Can you?*

Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?

Try to ask *Can you eat now?* Or literally, *You can cannot now eat?*

Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ xiànzài chī?

Try to answer *Yes.*

Kěyǐ.

*Yes. I can eat now.*

Kěyǐ. Wǒ kěyǐ xiànzài chī.

Now tell me that you can't eat now.

Wǒ bù kěyǐ xiànzài chī.

15:00

Tell me that you don't want to eat.

Wǒ bù yào chī.

Ask the woman if she has tea.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chá?

She answers *Yes. I have some.*

Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr.

Say *The tea is for you.*

Chá shì gěi nǐ de.

Ask her if she has beer.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu píjiǔ?

How would she answer *Yes. I have some.*

Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr.

Say *For you.*

Gěi nǐ de.

Do you remember how to ask how much one beer costs?

Yī bēi píjiǔ duōshǎo qián?

Now she tells you that she doesn't have any beer.

Wǒ méiyǒu píjiǔ.

Ask if she has any American dollars.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu měijīn?

Suppose she does have some. What would she say?

Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr.

How does she say *Yes. I have a lot?*

Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō.

Suppose she doesn't have any. What would she say?

Méiyǒu. Wǒ méiyǒu.

18:00

Try to say *I have some. It isn't very much.*

Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr. Bú shì hěn duō.

Do you remember how to ask *Can you?*

Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?

*Can you give me some money?*

Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián?

Now try to say *I want some.* Wǒ yào yìdiǎnr.  
 Say *You want some.* Nǐ yào yìdiǎnr.  
 Tell the man that you are giving him 14 units. Wǒ gěi nǐ shí sì kuài.  
 And how would you say *For you?* Gěi nǐ de.  
 Ask *Is it American dollars?* Use the positive/negative form. Shì bú shì měijīn?  
 And now ask *Do you want American dollars?* Nǐ yào bú yào měijīn?

21:00

Say *I can't.* Wǒ bù kěyǐ.  
 Try to say *I can't give any to you.* Any is understood. Wǒ bù kěyǐ gei nǐ.  
 Say *I don't have any American dollars.* Wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.  
 And now say just *I don't have.* Meaning *I don't have any.* Wǒ méiyǒu.  
 Try to say *I want some.* Wǒ yào yìdiǎnr.  
 Say again *I don't have any.* Wǒ méiyǒu.  
 Now say *I don't have very many* or *It isn't very many.* Bú shì hěn duō.  
 Say *I have some. Not very many.* Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr. Bú shì hěn duō.  
 Try to say *In that case, give me Renminbi.* Nàme, gěi wǒ Rénmínbì.  
 Say *I can't give you any.* Wǒ bù kěyǐ gei nǐ.  
 Say *In that case, I don't want any.* Nàme, wǒ bú yào.

Now for some problems in simple arithmetic. I'm going to ask you to do some addition. The questions will be posed this way.

24:00

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Liù jiā liù shì duōshǎo?

What do you suppose he just asked you? He asked  $6 + 6$  is how much?  
 Try to answer the question.

shí èr	12	十二
--------	----	----

Now get ready for some arithmetic.

Yī jiā èr shì duōshǎo?	1 + 2	一加二是多少?
Sān	3	三



Èr jiā sān shì duōshǎo?	2 + 3	二加三是多少?
Wǔ	5	五
Sì jiā sì shì duōshǎo?	4 + 4	四加四是多少?
Bā	8	八
Sì jiā èr shì duōshǎo?	4 + 2	四加二是多少?
Liù	6	六
Sān jiā sì shì duōshǎo?	3 + 4	三加四是多少?
Qī	7	七
Liù jiā sān shì duōshǎo?	6 + 3	六加三是多少?
Jiǔ	9	九
Jiǔ jiā yī shì duōshǎo?	9 + 1	九加一是多少?
Shí	10	十
Liù jiā qī shì duōshǎo?	6 + 7	六加七是多少?
Shí sān	13	十三
Shí sān jiā èr shì duōshǎo?	13 + 2	十三加二是多少?
Shí wǔ	15	十五
Bā jiā sì shì duōshǎo?	8 + 4	八加四是多少?
Shí èr	12	十二
Shí sān jiā sān shì duōshǎo?	13 + 3	十三加三是多少?
Shí liù	16	十六
Shí wǔ jiā èr shì duōshǎo?	15 + 2	十五加二是多少?
Shí qī	17	十七

Xièxie nǐ.

*Don't mention it.*

Bú kèqi.

(xiànzài nǐ gēn wèi xiǎo jiē duìhuà) Now a conversation with a young woman.

(xiànzài nǐ gēn wèi xiǎo jiē duìhuà)

You're in an agreeable mood so confirm everything she asks you.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ xiǎng bú xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn?	<b>女人:</b> 你好。你想不想跟我一起吃晚饭吗?
<b>Woman:</b> Hello. Would you like to eat dinner together with me?	<b>女人:</b> 你好。你想不想跟我一起吃晚饭吗?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.	<b>你:</b> 想。我想跟你一起吃晚饭。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I would like to eat dinner together with you.	<b>你:</b> 想。我想跟你一起吃晚饭。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Shénme shíhou?	<b>女人:</b> 什么时候?
<b>Woman:</b> What time?	<b>女人:</b> 什麼時候?

How does she ask *Can you this evening?*

27:00

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng kě bù kěyǐ?	<b>女人:</b> 你今天晚上可不可以?
---	-----------------------

<b>Woman:</b> Can you this evening?	<b>女人:</b> 你今天晚上可不可以?
Give a positive answer.	
<b>Nǚ:</b> Kěyǐ. Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng kěyǐ.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我今天晚上可以。
<b>You:</b> Yes. This evening, I can.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我今天晚上可以。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Qī diǎn zhōng. Hǎo bù hǎo?	<b>女人:</b> 七点钟。好不好?
<b>Woman:</b> 7 o'clock, OK?	<b>女人:</b> 七點鐘。好不好?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Hǎo. Qī diǎn zhōng.	<b>你:</b> 好。七点钟。
<b>You:</b> OK. 7 o'clock.	<b>你:</b> 好。七點鐘。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ qù mǎi yìdiǎnr píjiǔ?	<b>女人:</b> 你可不可以去买一点儿啤酒?
<b>Woman:</b> Can you go buy some beer?	<b>女人:</b> 你可不可以去買一點兒啤酒?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Kěyǐ. Wǒ kěyǐ qù mǎi yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我可以去买一点儿啤酒。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I can go buy some beer.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我可以去買一點兒啤酒。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu měijīn?	<b>女人:</b> 你有没有美金?
<b>Woman:</b> Do you have American dollars?	<b>女人:</b> 你有沒有美金?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu měijīn.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有美金。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have American dollars.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有美金。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu hěn duō?	<b>女人:</b> 你有没有很多?
<b>Woman:</b> Do you have a lot?	<b>女人:</b> 你有沒有很多?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有很多。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have a lot.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有很多。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Rénmínbì ne?	<b>女人:</b> 人民币呢?
<b>Woman:</b> How about Renminbi?	<b>女人:</b> 人民幣呢?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu Rénmínbì. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō Rénmínbì.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有人民币。我有很多人民币。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have Renminbi. I have a lot of Renminbi.	<b>你:</b> 有。我有人民幣。我有很多人民幣。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nàme, nǐ kě bù kěyǐ mǎi hěn duō píjiǔ?	<b>女人:</b> 那么, 你可不可以买很多啤酒?
<b>Woman:</b> In that case, can you buy a lot of beer?	<b>女人:</b> 那麼, 你可不可以買很多啤酒?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Kěyǐ. Wǒ kěyǐ mǎi hěn duō píjiǔ.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我可以买很多啤酒。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I can buy a lot of beer.	<b>你:</b> 可以。我可以買很多啤酒。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nàme, wǒ kěyǐ gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.	<b>女人:</b> 那么, 我可以跟你一起吃晚饭。
<b>Woman:</b> In that case, I can go eat dinner together with you.	<b>女人:</b> 那麼, 我可以跟你一起吃晚飯。

This is the end of unit 15.

30:00

## Unit 16

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	too/excessive	tài	太	太
2.	past particle	le	了	了
3.	enough	gòu	够	夠

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 16 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn diànhuà duìhuà. Please listen to this telephone conversation.	请听这段电话对话。 請聽這段電話對話。
---	------------------------

(Qǐng tīng zhè duàn diànhuà duìhuà.)

Miss Wang is speaking with Mr. Wu. In the conversation, you'll hear the man say Xiànzài tài wǎn le or *Now it's too late*.

(Qǐng tīng zhè duàn diànhuà duìhuà.)

<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Shì Wǔ Xiānsheng ma? Nǐ hǎo.	王小姐：是吴先生吗？你好。
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Is this Mr. Wu? Hello.	王小姐：是吳先生嗎？你好。
<b>Wǔ Xiānsheng:</b> Wáng Xiǎojie, Nǐ hǎo.	吴先生：王小姐，你好。
<b>Mr. Wu:</b> Hello, Miss Wang.	吴先生：王小姐，你好。
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Wǔ Xiānsheng, nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma?	王小姐：吴先生，你想跟我一起吃晚饭吗？
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Mr. Wu, would you like to eat dinner along with me?	王小姐：吳先生，你想跟我一起吃晚飯嗎？
<b>Wǔ Xiānsheng:</b> Shénme shíhou? Jīntiān wǎnshang bù xíng. Xiànzài tài wǎn le.	吴先生：什么时候？今天晚上不行。现在太晚了。
<b>Mr. Wu:</b> When? This evening is impossible. Now it's too late.	吴先生：什麼時候？今天晚上不行。現在太晚了。
<b>Wáng Xiǎojie:</b> Bú shì jīntiān wǎnshang. Míngtiān wǎnshang qī diǎn zhōng. Hǎo ma?	王小姐：不是今天晚上。明天晚上七点钟。好吗？
<b>Miss Wang:</b> Not this evening. Tomorrow evening at 7 o'clock, OK?	王小姐：不是今天晚上。明天晚上七點鐘。好嗎？
<b>Wǔ Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo.	吴先生：好。
<b>Mr. Wu:</b> OK.	吴先生：好。

(zài tīng yíci) (the conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember the word you use when handing something to somebody?	Nò.	
Say <i>For you</i> .	Gěi nǐ de.	
Try to ask <i>Is it for me?</i>	Shì bú shì gěi wǒ de?	
How else could you ask this question?	Shì gěi wǒ de ma?	
In this unit, we'll use both forms. Ask again <i>Is it for me?</i> Use the ma (吗) form first.	Shì gěi wǒ de ma? Shì bú shì gěi wǒ de?	
How does she answer <i>Yes. It is for you</i> .	Shì. Shì gěi nǐ de.	
<i>Thank you</i> .	Xièxie nǐ.	
<i>Don't mention it</i> .	Búkèqi.	03:00
Ask <i>What did you say?</i>	Nǐ shuō shénme?	
Now try to ask <i>What would you like to buy?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?	
Say <i>I don't know</i> .	Wǒ bù zhīdao.	
Ask him how much money it is.	Duōshǎo qián?	
How would he say <i>10 Renminbi?</i>	Shí quài Rénmínbì	
Say <i>I don't have any</i> .	Wǒ měiyǒu.	
Ask <i>What about American dollars?</i>	Měijīn ne? Duōshǎo qián?	
He says <i>Give me Renminbi</i> .	Gěi wǒ Rénmínbì.	
Tell him that you don't have any Renminbi.	Wǒ méiyǒu Rénmínbì.	
He answers <i>I don't understand</i> .	Wǒ bù míngbai.	
How do you say <i>I can</i> in the sense of I am able to.	Wǒ kěyǐ	
Say <i>You can</i> .	Nǐ Kěyǐ	06:00
And how do you ask <i>Can you?</i>	Nǐ kěyǐ ma? Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?	
Say <i>I can give you American dollars</i> .	Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ měijīn	
Ask me if I want any American dollars.	Nǐ yào měijīn ma? Nǐ yào bú yào měijīn?	

Say *I don't want any American dollars*      Wǒ bú yào měijīn.  
 Say *I give or I am giving.*      Wǒ gěi.  
 Now say *I am giving you 17 American dollars.*      Wǒ gěi nǐ shí qī kuài měijīn.  
 Try to say *That's a lot of money.*      Hěn duō qián.  
 That's is understood  
 Now say *18 American dollars? That's a lot of money.*      Shí bā kuài měijīn? Hěn duō qián.

You want to say *It's too much.* First the word *too.*

1.	tài	太	太
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)		tài	
<p>◆ 太(tài) is pronounced with a falling tone.</p> <p>Say <i>too</i> or <i>excessively.</i>      tài</p> <p><i>It's too much.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)      Tài duō le.</p>			
2.	le	了	了

◆ The 了(le) sound at the end is pronounced with a soft falling tone.<sup>1</sup> It's a particle that has no equivalent in English but it's used with *too.*

09:00

Say *It's too much.*      Tài duō le.  
 Now try to say *It's too much money.* 了(le) will go at the end.      Tài duō qián le.  
 Ask me how much money I have.      Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo qián?  
 And now say *12.*      shí èr  
 Try to say *20 or 2,10.*      èr shí  
 Now try to say *I have 20 American dollars*      Wǒ yǒu èr shí kuài měijīn.  
 Try to say *24.*      èr shí sì  
 Try to tell me that you have 25 American dollars.      Wǒ yǒu èr shí wǔ kuài měijīn.  
 Now say the number *28.*      èr shí bā  
 Say *That's a lot of money.*      Hěn duō qián.

<sup>1</sup>了(le) is actually pronounced with a neutral tone.

And how do you say <i>It's too much?</i>	Tài duō le.	
Say <i>It's too much money.</i>	Tài duō qián le.	12:00
Can you guess how you would say 30? ◀ That's a high level tone and falling tone. <sup>2</sup>	sān shí	
Say again 30.	sān shí	
And now say <i>I have 30 American dollars.</i>	Wǒ yǒu sān shí kuài měijīn.	
Tell me that you have 30 Renminbi.	Wǒ yǒu sān shí kuài Rénmínbì.	
Now tell me that you have 39 Renminbi.	Wǒ yǒu sān shí jiǔ kuài Rénmínbì.	
Try to say 29 units.	ér jiǔ kuài	
Now say 19.	shí jiǔ	
Ask <i>Is it for me?</i>	Shí gěi wǒ de ma? Shí bú shì gěi wǒ de?	
How do you say <i>It's too much?</i>	Tài duō le.	
Here's how to say <i>It's enough.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Gòu le.	
<b>3.</b>	gòu	够 夠
◀ This is pronounced with two falling tones. Say <i>It's enough.</i>	Gòu le.	
Try to say <i>It's not enough.</i> With the negative you don't need 了 (le).	Bú gòu.	15:00
And now say together <i>It's enough, it's not enough.</i>	Gòu le, bú gòu.	
Say 35. <i>It's enough.</i>	Sān shí wǔ. Gòu le.	
<i>Is it too much?</i>	Tài duō le ma? Shì bú shì tài duō?	
Try to say <i>But no. It's enough.</i>	Bú shì. Kěshì gòu le	
Now say <i>It's too much.</i>	Tài duō le.	
Say <i>It's too much money.</i>	Tài duō qián le.	
Try to say the number 40.	sì shí	

<sup>2</sup> This is an error. The second syllable is pronounced with a rising tone.

◀ 40 is first pronounced with a falling tone followed by a rising tone. Say 40 American dollars.	sì shí kuài měijīn	
And how would you say 14 American dollars?	shí sì kuài měijīn	
Say 40, 14.	sì shí, shí sì	
Try to say Give me 47 Renminbi.	Gěi wǒ shí sì qī kuài Rénmínbì.	
Say 46 is enough.	Sì shí liù gòu le.	
How would you ask if it's for you?	Shì gěi wǒ de ma? Shì bú shì gěi wǒ de ma?	18:00
And now say It's not enough.	Bú gòu.	
Say I want 48 Renminbi.	Wǒ yào sì shí bā kuài Renmínbì.	
Say 38.	sān shí bā	
Now say 28.	èr shí bā	
18	shí bā	
Say 19.	shí jiǔ	
Ask How many American dollars do you want?	Nǐ yào duōshǎo měijīn?	
Now say Give me some American dollars.	Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr měijīn.	
Say I can't.	Wǒ bù kěyǐ.	
Say I don't have any American dollars.	Wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.	
Say I don't have any.	Wǒ méiyǒu.	
Try to ask Do you have any money?	Nǐ yǒu qián ma? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qián?	21:00
Say I want some money.	Wǒ yào yìdiǎnr qián.	
And how would you tell me that you would like to buy something?	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	
How do you ask Can you or Are you able to?	Nǐ kěyǐ ma? Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?	
Ask the man if he is able to give some money to you.	Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián ma? Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián?	

Say *I don't have any money.*

Wǒ méiyǒu qián.

Try to say *Yes. You have some.*

Yǒu. Nǐ yǒu.

Say *You have a lot.*

Nǐ yǒu hěn duō.

Say *OK, here's 25 Renminbi.*

Hǎo. Nò. Èr shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.

Say *Thank you. It's enough.*

Xièxie nǐ. Gòu le.

24:00

Respond *Don't mention it.*

Búkèqì.

Now some arithmetic in Mandarin. (qǐng huí dá wèntí)

Please answer the questions. (qǐng huí dá wèntí)

Èr jiā sān shì duōshǎo?	$2 + 3 = ?$	二加三是多少?
Wǔ	5	五
Wǔ jiā sān shì duōshǎo?	$5 + 3 = ?$	五加三是多少?
Bā	8	八
Bā jiā wǔ shì duōshǎo?	$8 + 5 = ?$	八加五是多少?
Shí sān	13	十三
Shí yī jiā sì duōshǎo?	$11 + 4 = ?$	十一加四是多少?
Shí wǔ	15	十五
Shí sān jiā sì duōshǎo?	$13 + 4 = ?$	十三加四是多少?
Shí qī	17	十七
Shí liù jiā sì duōshǎo?	$16 + 4 = ?$	十六加四是多少?
Èr shí	20	二十
Èr shí jiā liù shì duōshǎo?	$20 + 6 = ?$	二十加六是多少?
Èr shí liù	26	二六
Èr shí bā jiā sì shì duōshǎo?	$28 + 4 = ?$	二十八加四是多少?
Sān shí èr	32	三二
Sān shí èr jiā èr shì duōshǎo?	$32 + 2 = ?$	三十二加二是多少?
Sān shí sì	34	三四
Sān shí sān jiā shí shì duōshǎo?	$30 + 10 = ?$	三十加十是多少?
Sì shí sān	43	四三

*It's enough! It's enough!*

Gòu le! Gòu le!

27:00

(xiànzài nǐ gēn zhè wèi xiānsheng duìhuà) Now a conversation with the gentleman.

Please answer affirmatively. The secret of the conversation is that you should listen for the verb. For example, if he says *can you do so and so?* Then you answer *yes I can*. If he says *do you have so and so?* Then you answer *yes I have* and so on.



Let's begin.	
<b>Nánrén:</b> Qǐngwèn, Nǐ yǒu qián ma?	男人：請問，你有錢嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Please let me ask, do you have money?	男人：請問，你有錢嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu qián.	你：有。我有錢。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have money.	你：有。我有錢。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ yǒu hěnduō qián ma?	男人：你有很多錢嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Do you have a lot of money?	男人：你有很多錢嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Shì. Wǒ yǒu hěnduō qián.	你：是。我有很多錢。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have a lot of money.	你：是。我有很多錢。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ yǒu měijīn ma?	男人：你有美金嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Do you have American dollars?	男人：你有美金嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒ yǒu měijīn.	你：有。我有美金。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have American dollars.	你：有。我有美金。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	男人：你想跟我一起喝一點兒東西嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Would you like to drink something with me?	男人：你想跟我一起喝一點兒東西嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	你：想。我想跟你一起喝一點兒東西。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I would like to drink something with you.	你：想。我想跟你一起喝一點兒東西。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ ma?	男人：你想喝一點兒啤酒嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Would you like to drink some beer?	男人：你想喝一點兒啤酒嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.	你：想。我想喝一點兒啤酒？
<b>You:</b> Yes I would like to drink some beer.	你：想。我想喝一點兒啤酒？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Kěshì wǒ méiyǒu. Nǐ kěyǐ mǎi yìdiǎnr ma?	男人：可是我没有。你可以買一點兒嗎？
<b>Man:</b> But I don't have any. Can you buy some?	男人：可是我沒有。你可以買一點兒嗎？
<b>Nǚ:</b> Kěyǐ. Wǒ kěyǐ mǎi yìdiǎnr.	你：可以。我可以買一點兒。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I can't buy some.	你：可以。我可以買一點兒。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Hǎo.	男人：好。
<b>Man:</b> OK.	男人：好。

This is the end of unit 16.

30:00

## Unit 17

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	expensive	gù	贵	貴
2.	fast	kuài	快	快

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 17 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn Carter Xiānsheng gēn Carter Tàitai de duìhuà)

Please listen to this conversation between Mr. Carter and Mrs. Carter.

In it, you'll hear the woman say *Wǒ qián bú gòu* or *I don't have enough money*.

(qǐng tīng)

<b>Carter Xiānsheng:</b> Nàme, nǐ jīntiān xiǎng zuò shénme?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 那么, 你今天想做什么?
<b>Mr. Carter:</b> So what would you like to do today?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 那麼, 你今天想做什麼?
<b>Carter Tàitai:</b> Wǒ? Wǒ jīntiān xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我? 我今天想买一点儿东西。
<b>Mrs. Carter:</b> Me? I would like to buy something today.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我? 我今天想買一點兒東西。
<b>Carter Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qián?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 你有没有钱?
<b>Mr. Carter:</b> Do you have money?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 你有沒有錢?
<b>Carter Tàitai:</b> Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr. Kěshì bú shì hěn duō.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我有一点儿。可是不是很多。
<b>Mrs. Carter:</b> I have a little but it is not enough.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我有一點兒。可是不是很多。
<b>Carter Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 你有多少人民币?
<b>Mr. Carter:</b> How much Renminbi do you have?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 你有多少人民幣?
<b>Carter Tàitai:</b> Sān shí wǔ kuài huòzhě sì shí kuài.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 三十五块或者四十块。
<b>Mrs. Carter:</b> 35 units or 40 units.	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 三十五塊或者四十塊。
<b>Carter Xiānsheng:</b> Měijīn ne? Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 美金呢? 你有多少?
<b>Mr. Carter:</b> How about American dollars? You have how much?	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 美金呢? 你有多少?
<b>Carter Tàitai:</b> Wǒ yǒu shí wǔ kuài huòzhě èr shí kuài měijīn. Wǒ qián bú gòu. Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián. Hǎo bù hǎo?	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我有十五块或者二十块美金。我钱不够。给我一点儿钱。好不好?
<b>Mrs. Carter:</b> I have 15 or 20 American dollars. My money is not enough. Give me a little	<b>Carter 太太:</b> 我有十五塊或者二十塊美

money OK?	金。我錢不夠。給我一點兒錢。好不好?
<b>Carter Xiānsheng:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Xiànzài nǐ qián gòu le.	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 好。訥。現在你錢夠了。
<b>Mr. Carter:</b> OK. Here you go. Now you have enough.	<b>Carter 先生:</b> 好。訥。現在你錢夠了。

(zài tīng yíci) (Listen again. The conversation above is repeated.)

How would you say the number 33 in Mandarin?

sān shí sān

How about 44?

sì shí sì

23

èr shí sān

13

shí sān

37

sān shí qī

Ask me if I have any money.

Nǐ yǒu qián ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qián?

Answer *I don't have any.*

Wǒ méiyǒu.

03:00

Now say *As for me, I have some.*

Wǒ ā. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr.

*I have a lot.*

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō.

Do you remember how to say *I can*, meaning *I am able to*?

Wǒ kěyǐ.

Say *I can give you some.*

Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ yìdiǎnr.

*I can give you some money.*

Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ yìdiǎnr qián.

Do you remember how to ask *Can you*?

Nǐ kěyǐ ma?  
Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ?

Try to answer *Yes, I can give you some.*

Kěyǐ gěi nǐ yìdiǎnr.

Say *OK.*

Hǎo.

Say *It is for you.*

Shì gěi nǐ de.

Ask *Is it for me?*

Shì gěi wǒ de ma?  
Shì bú shì gěi wǒ de?

06:00

Here's how to ask *Do you have Renminbi for me?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ yǒu Rénmínbì gěi wǒ ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì gěi wǒ?

You don't need the 的(de).

Ask again if I have Renminbi for you.

Nǐ yǒu Rénmínbì gěi wǒ ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Rénmínbì gěi wǒ?

And how would you answer  
*Yes. Here you are. For you.*

Yǒu. Nò. Gěi nǐ de.

Do you remember how to say *It's enough?*

Gòu le

Now tell me that *It's not enough.*

Bú gòu.

Try to ask *Is it enough?*

Gòu ma?  
Gòu bú gòu?

Tell me that *It's enough.*

Gòu le.

Ask again *Is it enough?*

Gòu ma?  
Gòu bú gòu?

She says *I have enough.* In Mandarin, *enough* can also mean *have enough.*  
Try to say *I have enough.*

Wǒ gòu le.

*I have enough money.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Wǒ qián gòu le.

Notice the word order.

Tell me that you have enough money.

Wǒ qián gòu le.

Try to tell me that you have enough Renminbi.

Wǒ Rénmínbì gòu le.

09:00

Say *Here you are. 45 Renminbi.*

Nò. Sì shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì.

Ask *Is it enough?*

Gòu ma?  
Gòu bú gòu?

Say *It's too much.*

Tài duō le.

Say *Give me 4 Renminbi.*

Gěi wǒ sì kuài Rénmínbì.

And now say *40.*

sì shí

Try to say *Now I have 41 Renminbi.*

Xiànzài wǒ yǒu sì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

Do you remember how to say  
*I have enough money?*

Wǒ qián gòu le.

Now say *I have enough Renminbi.*

Wǒ Rénmínbì gòu le.

Say *21.*

èr shí yī

Say 31.	sān shí yī	
Try to say 51.	wǔ shí yī	
What's the number 50 in Mandarin?	wǔ shí	
◀ That's a falling/rising tone and a rising tone. Say again 50.	wǔ shí	
Now try to say 60.	liù shí	
Say 61.	liù shí yī	
Say 57.	wǔ shí qī	12:00
Ask <i>Is it enough?</i>	Gòu ma? Gòu bú gòu?	
Ask how much money you owe.	Duōshǎo qián?	
Say 31 Renminbi.	sān shí yī kuài Rénmínbì	
Say 53 Renminbi.	wǔ shí sān kuài Rénmínbì	
Ask <i>Is it enough?</i>	Gòu ma? Gòu bú gòu?	
Try to ask her if she has enough money.	Nǐ qián gòu ma? Nǐ qián gòu bú gòu?	
Say <i>It's not enough.</i>	Bú gòu.	
Try to say <i>I don't have enough.</i>	Wǒ bú gòu.	
And how would you say <i>It's too much?</i>	Tài duō le.	
Here's how to say <i>It's too expensive.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Tài gùì le.	
1. gùì	贵	贵
◀ Say <i>expensive</i> , using the falling tone.	gùì	15:00
Tell me that <i>It's too expensive.</i>	Tài gùì.	
<i>It isn't too expensive.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) You drop the 了 (le) with the negative.	Bú tài gùì.	
Say <i>It isn't too expensive.</i>	Bú tài gùì.	
Say together <i>It's too expensive, it isn't too expensive.</i>	Tài gùì le, bú tài gùì.	

Say <i>I'm giving you 61 Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ gěi nǐ liù shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.
Ask <i>Is it for me?</i>	Shì gěi wǒ de ma? Shì bú shì gěi wǒ de?
And how would she ask <i>Do you have American currency for me?</i>	Nǐ yǒu měijīn gěi wǒ ma? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu měijīn gěi wǒ?
Now she asks <i>Can you give me some money?</i>	Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián ma? Nǐ kě bú kěyǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián?
Say <i>Give me American dollars.</i>	Gěi wǒ měijīn.
Say <i>I don't have American dollars.</i>	Wǒ méiyǒu měijīn.
Ask <i>Can you speak English?</i>	Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma? Nǐ huì bú huì shuō Yīngwén?
Now say <i>You speak very well.</i>	Nǐ shuō de hěn hǎo.
Do you remember how to say <i>I can speak Mandarin?</i>	Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.
Say <i>You can speak Mandarin.</i>	Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.
Tell her that she speaks very well.	Nǐ shuō de hěn hǎo.
Here's how to say <i>You speak too quickly.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.
<b>2.</b> kuài      快      快	
What part of that means <i>quickly</i> or <i>fast</i> ?	kuài
◀ This word is pronounced with a falling tone.	
Say <i>You speak too quickly.</i>	Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.
Say <i>I don't speak well</i> or literally, <i>I speak not well.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bú hǎo.
Try to say <i>I don't speak quickly.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bú kuài.
Try to say <i>You speak very quickly.</i>	Nǐ shuō de hěn kuài.
Say <i>I don't speak quickly.</i>	Wǒ shuō de bú kuài.
Now tell her <i>You speak too quickly.</i>	Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.

18:00

21:00

Imagine that you're having a conversation with the desk clerk in a hotel in Beijing. You have sent him to get a newspaper for you giving him 100 Renminbi. He has now returned with the newspaper and you're arguing with him about the change. When he tells you how much he is

going to give you, tell him no and claim 10 Renminbi more than whatever sum he mentions. Here he comes now.

男人: Nò. Bàozhǐ.

He just said *Here you are, the newspaper.*

Now respond to what he says next.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nò. Sān shí kuài Rénmínbì. Shì sān shí kuài Rénmínbì ma?	男人: 讷。三十块人民币。是三十块人民币吗?
<b>Man:</b> Here you are. 30 Renminbi. Isn't it 30 Renminbi?	男人: 讷。三十块人民币。是三十块人民币吗?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Bú shì. Shì sì shí kuài.	你: 不是。是四十块。
<b>You:</b> No. It's 40.	你: 不是。是四十块。

Say again *No. It's 40 units.*

Bú shì. Shì sì shí kuài.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nàme, wǒ gěi nǐ sān shí yī kuài. Shì sān shí yī kuài ma?	男人: 那么, 我给你三十一块。是三十一块吗?
<b>Man:</b> In that case, I will give you 31 units. Isn't it 31 units.	男人: 那么, 我给你三十一块。是三十一块吗?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Bú shì. Shì sì shí yī kuài. Sì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.	你: 不是。是四十一块。四十一块人民币。
<b>You:</b> No. It is 41 units. 41 Renminbi.	你: 不是。是四十一块。四十一块人民币。

24:00

*Give me 41 Renminbi.*

<b>Nǚ:</b> Gěi wǒ sì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.	你: 给我四十一块人民币。
<b>You:</b> Give me 41 Renminbi.	你: 给我四十一块人民币。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nò. Sì shí kuài Rénmínbì. Gòu ma?	男人: 讷。四十块人民币。够吗?
<b>Man:</b> Here you are. 40 Renminbi. Is it enough?	男人: 讷。四十块人民币。够吗?

Tell him *It's not enough.* Ask him to give you *50 Renminbi.*

<b>Nǚ:</b> Bú gòu. Gěi wǒ wǔ shí kuài Rénmínbì.	你: 不够。给我五十块人民币。
<b>You:</b> It's not enough. Give me 50 Renminbi.	你: 不够。给我五十块人民币。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Sì shí liù kuài Rénmínbì. Gòu ma?	男人: 好。讷。四十六块人民币。够吗?
<b>Man:</b> OK. Here you are. 46 Renminbi. Is it enough?	男人: 好。讷。四十六块人民币。够吗?
<b>Nǚ:</b> Bú gòu. Gěi wǒ wǔ shí liù kuài Rénmínbì.	你: 不够。给我五十六块人民币。
<b>You:</b> It's not enough. Give me 56 Renminbi.	你: 不够。给我五十六块人民币。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǔ shí sān kuài? Nò. Wǔ shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.	男人: 五十三快? 讷。五十三块人民币。
<b>Man:</b> 53 units? Here you are. 53 Renminbi.	男人: 五十三快? 讷。讷。五十三块人民币。

Say *It isn't 53 units. It's 63 units.*

<b>Nǐ:</b> Bú shì wǔ shí sān kuài. Shì liù shí sān kuài.	你：不是五十三快。是六十三快。
<b>You:</b> It isn't 53 units. It's 63 units.	你：不是無十三快。十六十三快。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ bù míngbai wǒ shuō shénme.	男人：你不明白我说什么。
<b>Man:</b> You don't understand what I say.	男人：你不明白我說什麼。

Tell him that you do understand what he is saying.

你：Wǒ míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

How does he tell you that he can speak English?

**Nánrén:** Wǒ huì shuō yīngwèn.

27:00

How does he ask you if you can speak Mandarin?

**Nánrén:** Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

**Nánrén:** Nǐ huì bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà?

Tell him *Yes. You can speak Mandarin.*

你：Huì. Wǒ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ shuō de tài kuài le ma?	男人：我说的太快了吗？
<b>Man:</b> Do I speak too fast?	男人：我說的太快了嗎？

How would you say  
*You're not speaking quickly?*

你：Nǐ shuō de bú kuài.

Tell him to give you some money.

你：Gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nàme, wǔ shí yī kuài. Hǎo ma?	男人：那么，五十一块。好吗？
<b>Man:</b> In that case 51 units. OK?	男人：那麼，五十一塊。好嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Bù hǎo.	你：不好。
<b>You:</b> Not OK.	你：不好。

Tell him to give you 61 Renminbi.

你：Gěi wǒ liù shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Liù shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.	男人：好。訥。六十一块人民币。
<b>Man:</b> OK. Here you are. 61 Renminbi.	男人：好。訥。六十一塊人民幣。

He asks *Is it enough?*

**Nánrén:** Gòu ma?

**Nánrén:** Gòu bú gòu?

How do you think he would ask  
*Do you have enough money?*

**Nánrén:** Nǐ qián gòu ma?

**Nánrén:** Nǐ qián gòu bú gòu?

Say *I have enough money.*

你：Wǒ qián gòu le.

Say *Now it's enough. Thank you.*

你：Xiànzài gòu le. Xièxie nǐ.

This is the end of unit 17.

30:00



## Unit 18

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	measure word for hats, caps	dǐng	顶	頂
2.	hat	màozi	帽子	帽子
3.	relatively	bǐjiào	比较	比較
4.	husband	xiānsheng	先生	先生
5.	wife	tàitai	太太	太太
6.	water	shuǐ	水	水
7.	bother/trouble/ please	máfan	麻烦	麻煩

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 18 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

Matthew and his friend Diana are in Beijing. She wants to buy a hat  
zhè dǐng màozi *this hat*

1.	dǐng	顶	頂
2.	màozi	帽子	帽子

(qǐng tīng)

<b>Diana:</b> Matthew!	<b>Matthew!</b>
<b>Diana:</b> Matthew!	<b>Matthew!</b>
<b>Matthew:</b> Shénme shì?	什么是?
<b>Matthew:</b> What is it?	什麼是?
<b>Diana:</b> Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.	我想买一点儿东西。
<b>Diana:</b> I would like to buy something.	我想買一點兒東西。
<b>Matthew:</b> Nǐ xiǎng mǎi shénme?	你想买什么?
<b>Matthew:</b> What would you like to buy?	你想買什麼?
<b>Diana:</b> Zhè dǐng màozi.	这顶帽子。
<b>Diana:</b> This hat.	這頂帽子。
<b>Matthew:</b> Duōshǎo qián?	多少钱?
<b>Matthew:</b> How much money?	多少錢?
<b>Diana:</b> Yī bǎi kuài Rénmínbì.	一百块人民币。
<b>Diana:</b> 100 Renminbi.	一百塊人民幣。
<b>Matthew:</b> Yī bǎi kuài Rénmínbì. Shí èr kuài měijīn. Bú shì hěn guì.	一百块人民币。十二块美金。不是很贵。

<b>Matthew:</b> 100 Renminbi. 12 American dollars. Not very expensive.	一百塊人民幣。十二塊美金。不是很貴。
<b>Diana:</b> Nàme. Nǐ gěi wǒ yìdiǎnr qián. Hǎo bù hǎo?	那麼，你給我一點兒錢。好不好？
<b>Diana:</b> In that case, give me some money OK?	那麼，你給我一點兒錢。好不好？
<b>Matthew:</b> Hǎo. Nò. Liù shí kuài Rénmínbì. Gòu bú gòu?	好。訥。六十塊人民幣。夠不夠？
<b>Matthew:</b> OK. Here you go. 100 Renminbi. Is it enough?	好。訥。六十塊人民幣。夠不夠？
<b>Diana:</b> Gòu le. Xièxie nǐ.	夠了。謝謝你。
<b>Diana:</b> It's enough. Thank you.	夠了。謝謝你。

It would be very nice if she could get her hat for 100 Renminbi.  
100 yī bǎi

For this conversation, let's assume that she can. (zài tīng yíci)  
(the conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember the number 50 in Mandarin? wǔ shí

Try to say 61. liù shí yī

Say *It's too expensive*. Remember the ending. Tài guì le.

Do you remember how to say 32 units or 33 units? Sān shí èr kuài huòzhě sān shí sān?

Try to say *It's very expensive*. Hěn guì.

Now tell him that *It's too expensive*. Tài guì le.

Say together  
*It's very expensive, it's too expensive.* Hěn guì, tài guì le.

03:00

What Mandarin word means *quickly*? kuài

And how would you tell someone that she is speaking too quickly? Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.

Tell her that you don't understand what she is saying Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

Do you remember how to ask *Is it enough*? Gòu ma?  
Gòu bú gòu?

And how would you ask  
*Do you have enough money*? Nǐ qián gòu ma?  
Nǐ qián gòu bú gòu?

Tell me that you have 41 Renminbi. Wǒ yǒu sì shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.

Say *It's too much.* Tàì duō le.  
 Say *It's enough.* Gòu le.  
 Try to say *It's not expensive.* Bú guì.  
*Over there It's not too expensive.* Remember to say *Located over there.* Zài nàr bú tài guì.

Here's how to say *It's more expensive.*  
 Literally, you'll say *It's relatively expensive.* Bǐjiào guì.  
 (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

3.	bǐjiào	比较	比較
----	--------	----	----

◀ That's a falling/rising tone followed by two falling tones.

06:00

Try to say *relatively.* Bǐjiào.  
 Bǐjiào guì.  
 Say *It's more expensive.* Bǐjiào guì.  
 Ask me if I have enough money. Nǐ qián gòu ma?  
 Nǐ qián gòu bú gòu?  
 Answer this question *Yes.* Gòu.  
 Say *20 American dollars.* èr shí kuài měijīn  
 Say *42 Renminbi.* sì shí èr kuài Rénmínbì  
 And how would you say *30 American dollars?* sān shí kuài měijīn  
 Say *It's more expensive.* Bǐjiào guì.  
 Say *It's too much.* Tàì duō le.  
 Now say *It's not enough.* Bú gòu.  
 Ask *Is it enough?* Gòu ma?  
 Gòu bú gòu?  
 Now say *It's enough.* Gòu le.  
 Say *Now you're speaking too quickly.* Xiànzài nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.  
*My husband speaks very quickly.* Wǒ de xiānsheng shuō de hěn kuài.  
 (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

4.	Xiānsheng	先生	先生
----	-----------	----	----

◀ *Husband* is pronounced with two high level tones.<sup>1</sup>

09:00

Say *husband*. xiānsheng

*My Husband*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Wǒ de xiānsheng.

的 (de) is pronounced with a falling tone.<sup>2</sup>

Say again *My husband*. Wǒ de xiānsheng.

And now say *My place*. Wǒ nàr.

Say again *My husband*. Wǒ de xiānsheng

This is more commonly used for *my*.

Now here's how to say *My wife*. Wǒ de tàitai.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	tàitai	太太	太太
----	--------	----	----

◀ That's pronounced with two falling tones.<sup>3</sup>

Say again *My wife*. Tàitai.

Say *My wife*. Tàitai.

Say *My husband*. Wǒ de xiānsheng.

Say *My wife is over there*. Wǒ de tàitai zài nàr.

Say *My wife would like to drink something*. Wǒ de tàitai xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

12:00

Say *My husband would like to drink something*. Wǒ de xiānsheng xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Say *My husband would like to drink beer*. Wǒ de xiānsheng xiǎng hē píjiǔ.

Say *My wife would like to drink some tea*. Wǒ de tàitai xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr chá.

Say *Here, it's more expensive*. Zài zhèr, bǐjiào guì.

*I would like to drink some water*. Wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr shuǐ.

6.	shuǐ	水	水
----	------	---	---

◀ *Water* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Say *water*. shuǐ

<sup>1</sup> In 先生 (*husband/xiānsheng*), the second syllable is pronounced with a neutral tone.

<sup>2</sup> 的 (de) is pronounced with a neutral tone.

<sup>3</sup> The second syllable of 太太 (*wife/tàitai*) is pronounced with a neutral tone.

<i>Please give me water. (qǐng tīng)</i>		Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.	
7.	máfan	麻烦	麻烦
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)		Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.	

◀ This expression for *please* is pronounced with two rising tones<sup>4</sup> (máfan), followed by a falling/rising tone(nǐ).

Say again *Please*. Máfan nǐ.  
Literally, this means *bothering you* in the sense of *I'm sorry to bother you*.

Say *Please give me water*. Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.

15:00

Now say  
*My husband would like to drink some water*. Wǒ de xiānsheng xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr shuǐ.

Say *Please give me tea*. Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ chá.

Say *My wife*. Wǒ de tàitai.

Try to say *Your wife*. Nǐ de tàitai.

Say *Your husband is here*. Nǐ de xiānsheng zài zhèr.

Ask *Where's my wife?* Wǒ de tàitai zài nǎr?

Say *Your wife isn't here*. Nǐ de tàitai bú zài zhèr.

Say *Your husband would like to eat something now*. Nǐ de xiānsheng xiànzài xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Ask *My husband?* Wǒ de xiānsheng?

Say *My wife would like to drink some water*. Wǒ de tàitai xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr shuǐ.

And how would you say *Please give me water*. Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.

18:00

Now say  
*My husband would like to drink some beer*. Wǒ de xiānsheng xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.

Do you remember how to say  
*It's too expensive?* Tài guì le.

And now say *Here it's more expensive*. Zài zhèr bǐjiào guì.

Ask *Do you have tea?*  
Nǐ yǒu chá ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chá?

<sup>4</sup> The second syllable of 麻烦 (*to bother/máfan*) is pronounced with a neutral tone and 你 (*you/nǐ*) is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Answer <i>No</i> .	Méiyǒu.
And now say <i>I don't have any tea</i> .	Wǒ méiyǒu chá.
Do you remember how to ask <i>With whom?</i>	Gēn shéi yìqǐ?
What part of that means <i>Whom</i> or <i>Who?</i>	Shéi?
Try to ask <i>Who's over there?</i>	Shéi zài nàr?
Say <i>Your wife</i> .	Nǐ de tàitai.
Ask <i>What would your wife like to do?</i>	Nǐ de tàitai xiǎng zuò shénme?
Say <i>My wife would like to eat something</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Ask <i>What would you like to drink?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?
Say <i>Please give me tea or water</i> .	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ chá huòzhě shuǐ.
Say <i>You can drink tea</i> .	Nǐ kěyǐ hē chá.
Ask me where my wife is.	Nǐ de tàitai zài nǎr?
Say <i>My wife? I don't know</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai? Wǒ bù zhīdao.
Now try to say <i>My wife is at my place</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai zài wǒ nàr.
Ask if she'd like to eat supper with you. Remember the word order.	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma? Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn?
And now say <i>Impossible</i> .	Bù xíng.
Now say <i>I can't eat supper with you</i> .	Wǒ bù kěyǐ gēn nǐ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.
How would you tell her that <i>It's not too expensive?</i>	Bú tài guì.
Say <i>Here it's more expensive</i> .	Zài zhèr bǐjiào guì.
Say <i>50 Renminbi</i> .	wǔ shí kuài Rénmínbì
Say <i>22 American dollars</i> .	èr shí èr kuài měijīn
She says <i>I'm going to eat dinner with my husband</i> . Just Listen.	Wǒ yào gēn wǒ de xiānsheng yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.
Say <i>I'm going to eat dinner</i> .	Wǒ yào chī wǎnfàn.
Say <i>With my husband</i> or <i>Along with my husband</i> .	Gēn wǒ de xiānsheng yìqǐ.

24:00

Now say <i>I'm going to eat dinner with my husband.</i>	Wǒ yào gēn wǒ de xiānsheng yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn.
Ask <i>Then would you like to drink something?</i>	Nàme, nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma? Nàme, nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?
How does she accept?	Xiǎng. Xièxie nǐ.
Ask her what she would like to drink.	Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?
Say <i>Please give me water.</i>	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.
Say <i>You can drink beer.</i>	Nǐ kěyǐ hē píjiǔ.
Say <i>Not OK. It's too expensive.</i>	Bù hǎo. Tài guì le.
Say <i>Here it's more expensive.</i>	Zài zhèr bǐjiào guì.
How would you ask <i>Then how about tea?</i>	Nàme, chá ma?
Tell her <i>It's not too expensive.</i>	Bú tài guì.
She says <i>OK. I would like to drink tea.</i>	Hǎo. Wǒ xiǎng hē chá.
Order the tea for her. Say <i>Please, give me one cup of tea.</i>	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ yī bēi chá.
Say <i>Here you are, tea.</i>	Nò. Chá.

27:00

Listen to what she says and respond appropriately.

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Xièxie nǐ.	女人：谢谢你。
<b>Woman:</b> Thank you.	女人：謝謝你。
<b>Nǚ:</b> Búkèqi.	你：不客气。
<b>You:</b> Don't mention it.	你：不客氣。

This is the end of unit 18.

30:00

## Unit 19

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	you (plural)	nǐmen	你们	你們
2.	we/us	wǒmen	我们	我們
3.	he/him	tā	他	他
4.	she/her	tā	她	她
5.	please come in	qǐng jìn	请进	請進
6.	please	qǐng	请	請
7.	come in/enter	jìn	进	進
8.	live/reside	zhù	住	住
9.	and	hé	和	和
10.	Washington	Huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	華盛頓

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 19 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà. Please listen to this conversation.	请听这段对话。 請聽這段對話。
---	--------------------

In the conversation you will hear

1.	nǐmen	你们	你們
which means <i>you</i> referring to more than one person and			
2.	wǒmen	我们	我們
which means <i>we</i> .			

An American woman and her husband are eating at a restaurant. The woman will have a conversation with the waiter. Listen as he greets them.

<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Nǐmen hǎo. Nǐmen xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma? <b>Waiter:</b> Hello. Would you like to eat something?	<b>服务员:</b> 你们好。你们想吃一点儿东西吗? <b>服務員:</b> 你們好。你們想吃一點兒東西嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒmen xiànzài bù xiǎng chī. <b>Woman:</b> We would not like to eat now.	<b>女人:</b> 我们现在不想吃。 <b>女人:</b> 我們現在不想吃。
<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Nàme, nǐmen xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma? <b>Waiter:</b> In that case, would you like to drink something?	<b>服务员:</b> 那么, 你们想喝一点儿东西吗? <b>服務員:</b> 那麼, 你們想喝一點兒東西嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Xiǎng.	<b>女人:</b> 想。



<b>Woman:</b> Yes.	女人：想。
<b>Fúwùyuán:</b> Wǒmen yǒu chá, píjiǔ huòzhě...	服务员：我们有茶，啤酒或者...
<b>Waiter:</b> We have tea, beer or...	服務員：我們有茶，啤酒或者...
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ de xiānsheng bù xiǎng hē píjiǔ. Tā yào chá.	女人：我的先生不想喝啤酒。他要茶。
<b>Woman:</b> My husband would not like beer. He wants tea.	女人：我的先生不想喝啤酒。他要茶。

In this conversation you heard			Tā yào chá.	
3.	he	tā	他	他
4.	she	tā	她	她

Or *he wants tea.*

Listen again. (The conversation above is repeated)

Do you remember how to say *quickly* or *fast*? kuài

Tell me that I speak too quickly. Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.

Do you remember how to say that something is too expensive? Tài guì le.

Now say *It's more expensive.* Bǐjiào guì.

Say *50 Renminbi.* wǔ shí kuài Renminbi

Say *45 Renminbi.* sì shí wǔ kuài Renminbi

Say again *It's more expensive.* Bǐjiào guì.

Say *61 Renminbi.* liù shí yī kuài Rénmínbì

03:00

Now say *It's too expensive.* Tài guì le.

Say *56 Renminbi.* wǔ shí liù kuài Rénmínbì

Say the number *21.* èr shí yī

Do you remember how to say *Please give me two beers.* Máfān nǐ, gěi wǒ liǎng bēi píjiǔ.

Say *68 units is too expensive.* liù shí bā kuài tài guì le

Ask *Is it enough?* Gòu ma?  
Gòu bú gòu?

And how do you ask *Do you have enough?* Nǐ gòu ma?  
Nǐ gòu bú gòu?

Answer <i>Yes. I have enough money.</i>	Gòu. Wǒ qián gòu le.	
<i>I'm give you 53 Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ gěi nǐ wǔ shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.	
Now say <i>63 Renminbi.</i>	liù shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.	
Say <i>It's more expensive.</i>	Bǐjiào guì.	
Do you remember how to ask <i>Where is your wife?</i>	Nǐ de tàitai zài nǎr?	06:00
Say <i>My wife? I don't know.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai? Wǒ bù zhīdao.	
Ask her were her husband is.	Nǐ de xiānsheng zài nǎr?	
And how would you say <i>My husband is over there.</i>	Wǒ de xiānsheng zài nàr.	
<i>He's over there. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)</i>	Tā zài nàr.	
◆ The Mandarin word for <i>he</i> is pronounced with a high level tone. Say it again.	tā	
Say <i>My husband? He's over there.</i>	Wǒ de xiānsheng? Tā zài nàr.	
How would you ask <i>Who is over there?</i>	Shéi zài nàr?	
Say <i>My husband is over there.</i>	Wǒ de xiānsheng zài nàr.	
他/她 (tā) can mean either <i>he</i> or <i>she</i> depending on the context. <sup>1</sup> Say <i>She's over there.</i>	Tā zài nàr.	
Say <i>My wife? She's over there.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai? Tā zài nàr.	
Now ask me if she's located over there.	Tā zài nàr ma?	
Say <i>She's not over there. She's here.</i>	Tā bú zài nàr. Tā zài zhèr.	09:00
Ask the woman what her husband would like to drink.	Nǐ de xiānsheng xiǎng hē shénme?	
Here's how to ask <i>What would Mr. Chen like to drink?</i>	Chén xiānsheng xiǎng hē shénme?	
The Chinese word for <i>husband</i> can also mean <i>Mister</i> . Say <i>Mister Chen.</i>	Chén Xiānsheng.	

<sup>1</sup> There is a separate character for he (他) and she (她), however both are pronounced the same (tā).

Ask *What would Mr. Chen like to drink?* Chén xiānsheng xiǎng hē shénme?

And now ask *What would he like to drink?* Tā xiǎng hē shénme?

Answer *He would like to drink tea.* Tā xiǎng hē chá.

Say *Or water.* Huòzhě shuǐ.

Imagine that you are in a hotel room in Beijing. Someone knocks at the door. Here's how you'd say *Please come in.* Just listen. Qǐng jìn.

5.	qǐng jìn	请进	請進
6.	qǐng	请	請

Here's the part of that that means *Come in.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

7.	jìn	进	進
----	-----	---	---

◀ This word is pronounced with a falling tone.  
Say it again.

jìn

*Please come in.* Please repeat after the speaker. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Qǐng jìn.

◀ 请 (Qǐng) is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.  
Say it again.

Qǐng.

12:00

And now say *Please give me water.* Máfān nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.

You'll use 麻烦你 (máfān nǐ) when asking for something. It's like *Give me.*

Now say *Please come in.* Qǐng jìn.

You'll use this expression when making an offer or inviting someone to do something.  
Say again *Please come in.* Qǐng jìn.

Ask the person what he would like to drink. Nǐ xiǎng hē shénme?

Say again *Please give me water.* Máfān nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.

Try to ask *What about your husband?* Nǐ de xiānsheng ne?

Ask *What would Mr. Chen like to drink?* Chén Xiānsheng xiǎng hē shénme?

Now ask *What about your wife?* Nǐ de tàitai ne?

What about Mrs. Ellis? (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Ellis Tàitai ne?

Now try to ask  
*What would Mrs. Ellis like to drink?* Ellis Tàitai xiǎng hē shénme?

Here's how to say *you* referring to more than one person. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) nǐmen

◀ The tones are falling/rising and rising.<sup>2</sup>

Say the plural *you* again.

nǐmen

15:00

You want to ask *Where do you live?*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐmen zhù zài nǎr?

8.

zhù

住

住

◀ The word *live* is pronounced with a falling tone.

Say *live*.

zhù

Speaking to more than one person, say

*You live*.

Nǐmen zhù.

Try to say *I live*.

Wǒ zhù.

Say *Please come in*.

Qǐng jìn.

Speaking to more than one person, ask

*Where do you live?*

Nǐmen zhù zài nǎr?

Here's how to say *We live here*.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Wǒmen zhù zài zher.

Say *We*.

Wǒmen.

Say *We live here*.

Wǒmen zhù zài zher.

Now say *We would like to*.

Wǒmen xiǎng.

Say *We would like to drink something*.

Wǒmen xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Ask them what they would like to drink.

Nǐmen xiǎng hē shénme?

And how would you ask what Mr. Chen would like to drink?

Chén Xiānsheng xiǎng hē shénme?

18:00

*My Husband and I*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Wǒ de xiānsheng hé wǒ.

9.

hé

和

和

◀ The Mandarin word *and* is pronounced with a rising tone.

Say my *Husband and I*.

Wǒ de xiānsheng hé wǒ.

Now say *We would like to drink something*.

Wǒmen xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

Listen and repeat to compare *and* (和/hé) with a rising tone and *drink* (喝/hē) with a high level tone.

hé, hē

Try to say *My husband and I would like to drink something*.

Wǒ de xiānsheng hé wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

<sup>2</sup> The second syllable is pronounced with a neutral tone.

Now say <i>My husband and I would like to drink tea.</i>	Wǒ de xiānsheng hé wǒ xiǎng hē chá.	
Do you remember how to say <i>I too would like to.</i>	Wǒ yě xiǎng.	
Try to say <i>Please give me tea.</i>	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ chá.	
Try to say <i>My wife and I.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ.	21:00
Say <i>We don't live here.</i>	Wǒmen bú zhù zài zhèr.	
Ask <i>Where is your wife?</i>	Nǐ de tàitai zài nǎr?	
<i>Where is Mrs. Ellis?</i>	Ellis Tàitai zài nǎr?	
Say <i>My wife is over there.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai zài nàr.	
And how would you say <i>My wife is at my place.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai zài wǒ nàr.	
Now say <i>We would like to drink water.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng hē shuǐ.	
How would you say <i>Mr. Chen would like to drink water.</i>	Chén xiānsheng xiǎng hē shuǐ.	
Say <i>He would like to drink water.</i>	Tā xiǎng hē shuǐ.	
Say <i>But we would like to drink beer.</i>	Kěshì wǒmen xiǎng hē píjiǔ.	
Do you remember how to say <i>31 Renminbi.</i>	Sān shí yī kuài Rénmínbì.	24:00
Say <i>63 Renminbi.</i>	liù shí sān kuài Rénmínbì.	
How would she tell you that she has enough money?	Wǒ qián gòu le.	

Imagine now that you're in your hotel room in Beijing. You're expecting a business visit from Mr. Chen, a Chinese colleague you've never met. Promptly, at the appointed time, there's a knock on your door.

What do you say? Nǐ: Qǐng jìn.

He comes in. React to what he says next.

<b>Chén Xiānsheng:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	陈先生: 你好。
<b>Mr. Chen:</b> Hello.	陳先生: 你好。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Nǐ hǎo, Chén Xiānsheng.	你: 你好, 陈先生。
<b>You:</b> Hello, Mr. Chen.	你: 你好, 陳先生。
<b>Chén Xiānsheng:</b> Qǐng wèn. Nǐ de xiānsheng zài nǎr?	陈先生: 請問。你的先生在哪兒?
<b>Mr. Chen:</b> Please let me ask, where is your husband?	陳先生: 請問。你的先生在哪兒?

Tell him *He's not here*

Nǐ: Tā bú zài zhèr.

**Chén Xiānsheng:** Tā zài nàr ma?

陈先生: 他在那儿吗?

**Mr. Chen:** Is he there?

陳先生: 他在那兒嗎?

Tell him *I don't know.*

Nǐ: Wǒ bù zhīdao.

Now suppose that you lived in America.  
*In America.*

Zài Měiguó.

Zài Měiguó.

Suppose your home in America is in Washington. (zài Huáshèngdùn)

10. Huáshèngdùn

华盛顿

華盛頓

Use this information in replying to his next question.

**Chén Xiānsheng:** Nǐmen zhù zài Měiguó nǎr?

陈先生: 你们住在美国哪儿?

**Mr. Chen:** Where do you live in America?

陳先生: 你們住在美國哪兒?

Nǐ: Wǒmen zhù zài Huáshèngdùn.

你: 我们住在华盛顿。

You: We live in Washington.

你: 我們住在華盛頓。

You ask him

*What about you? Where do you live?*

Nǐ ne? Nǐ zhù zài nǎr?

**Chén Xiānsheng:** Wǒmen zhù zài Běijīng.

陈先生: 我们住在北京。

**Mr. Chen:** We live in Beijing.

陳先生: 我們住在北京。

*Along with whom?*

Gēn shéi yìqǐ?

27:00

Try to ask

*You along with your wife are located together?*

Nǐ gēn nǐ de tàitai zài yìqǐ ma?

How does he give an affirmative answer?

Shì. Wǒ gēn wǒ de tàitai zài yìqǐ.

Now he says *My wife and I live here.*

Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ zhù zài zhèr.

At this moment, there is another knock at the door.

Say *Please come in.*

Qǐng jìn.

Mr. Chen asks *Who?* Meaning *Who is it?*

Shéi?

Try to say *It's my husband.*

Shì wǒ de xiānsheng.

Your husband enters and the two men shake hands.

Ask the two of them

*Would you like to drink something?*

Nǐmen xiǎng hē yìdiǎn dōngxi ma?

Nǐmen xiǎng bù xiǎng hē yìdiǎn dōngxi?

Your husband say

*Please we would like to drink some tea.*

Máfan nǐ, wǒmen xiǎng hē yìdiǎn chá.

This is the end of unit 19.

30:00

## Unit 20

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	child	xiǎoháir	小孩儿	小孩兒
2.	How many?	jǐ gè	几个	幾個
3.	all-purpose measure word	gè	个	個
4.	son	érzi	儿子	兒子
5.	daughter	nǚér	女儿	女兒
6.	big/grown up	dà	大	大
7.	they/them	tāmen	他们	他們

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 20 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà. Please listen to this conversation.	请听这段对话。 請聽這段對話。
Mr. Jones is arriving at Mr. and Mrs. Chen's house. (qǐng tīng)	
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Chén Tàitai, nǐ hǎo.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 陈太太, 你好。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> Hello, Mrs. Chen.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 陳太太, 你好。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐ hǎo, Jones Xiānsheng. Qǐng jìn.	<b>陈太太:</b> 你好, Jones 先生。请进。
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Hello, Mr. Jones. Please come in.	<b>陳太太:</b> 你好, Jones 先生。請進。
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Xièxie nǐ.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 谢谢你。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> Thank you.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 謝謝你。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Jones Xiānsheng, nǐ xiǎng hē shénme? Yìdiǎn píjiǔ?	<b>陈太太:</b> Jones 先生, 你想喝什么? 一点儿啤酒?
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Mr. Jones. Would you like to drink something? Some beer?	<b>陳太太:</b> Jones 先生, 你想喝什麼? 一點兒啤酒?
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Wǒ bù xiǎng hē píjiǔ. Máfan nǐ. Wǒ xiǎng hē shuǐ.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 我不想喝啤酒。麻烦你, 我想喝水。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> I would not like to drink beer. May I bother you? I would like to drink water.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 我不想喝啤酒。麻煩你, 我想喝水。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Jones Tàitai zài nǎr? Tā gēn nǐ yìqǐ zài Běijīng ma?	<b>陈太太:</b> Jones 太太在哪儿? 她跟你一起在北京吗?
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Where is Mrs. Jones? Is she with you in Beijing?	<b>陳太太:</b> Jones 太太在哪兒? 她跟你一起在北京嗎?
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Bú shì. Wǒ de tàitai bú zài	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 不是。我的太太不在北京。

Běijīng. Tā zài Měiguó.	她在美國。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> No. My wife is not in Beijing. She is in America.	<b>Jones 先生:</b> 不是。我的太太不在北京。她在美國。
Do you remember how to ask <i>Who?</i> meaning <i>Who is it?</i>	Shéi?
Tell the person to <i>Please come in.</i>	Qǐng jìn.
And now say <i>Please give me water.</i>	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.
Ask the woman if she would like to drink something.	Nǐ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma? Nǐ xiǎng bú xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?
Say <i>I have beer.</i>	Wǒ yǒu píjiǔ.
Say <i>And tea.</i>	Hé chá.
Do you remember how to say <i>It's more expensive?</i>	Bǐjiào guì.
Now say <i>It's too expensive.</i>	Tài guì le.
And how would you say <i>quickly?</i>	kuài
Tell the woman that she is speaking too quickly.	Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.
	03:00
Ask her where her husband is.	Nǐ de xiānsheng zài nǎr?
Ask where is Mr. Chen?	Chén Xiānsheng zài nǎr?
She says <i>My husband?</i>	Wǒ de xiānsheng?
Try to say <i>I don't know where he is.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao tā zài nǎr.
Ask the man where his wife is located	Nǐ de tàitai zài nǎr?
<i>Is she with you?</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Literally, <i>She with you is located along?</i>	Tā gēn nǐ zài yìqǐ ma?
Ask again <i>Is she with you?</i> This is how you would ask if two people are together in the same location.	Tā gēn nǐ zài yìqǐ ma?
And do you remember how to ask <i>Would you like to drink something with me?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma? Nǐ xiǎng bú xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi?
Ask again <i>Is she with you?</i>	Tā gēn nǐ zài yìqǐ ma?



Try to say she is with your husband.

Tā gēn nǐ de xiānsheng zài yìqǐ.

06:00

Ask *Where is he?*

Tā zài nǎr?

*He's over there.*

Tā zài nàr.

Say *He's with your wife.*

Tā gēn nǐ de tàitai zài yìqǐ.

Referring to the woman and her husband, ask  
*Where do you live?*

Nǐmen zhù zài nǎr?

Try to say *We live in America.*

Wǒmen zhù zài Měiguó.

Here's how to ask *Do you have any children?*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐmen yǒu xiǎoháir ma?

1.	xiǎoháir	小孩儿	小孩兒
----	----------	-----	-----

◀ Children is pronounced with a falling/rising and rising tones.  
Say again *children.*

xiǎoháir

Ask someone if he has children.

Nǐ yǒu xiǎoháir ma?

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎoháir?

And now answer *Yes. We have children.*

Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu xiǎoháir.

Do you remember how to ask  
*How many Renminbi do you have?*

Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo Rénmínbì?

09:00

*How many children do you have?*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?

2.	jǐ gè	几个	幾個
3.	gè	个	個

What part of that means *How many?*

Jǐ gè.

◀ The tones are falling/rising and falling.

Ask again *How many?*

Jǐ gè.

个(gè) is a measure word. In Mandarin, it's used when referring to the size of a group of people.

Now ask the woman and her husband how  
many children they have.

Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?

Now try to say *We have three children.*

Wǒmen yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.

Say again *Three children.*

Sān gè xiǎoháir.

*Two sons.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Liǎng gè érzi.

4.	érzi	儿子	兒子
----	------	----	----

◀ *sons* is pronounced with rising and falling/rising tones.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>儿子(*child/érzi*) is pronounced with a rising tone, followed by a neutral tone.

Say <i>sons</i> .	érzi			
Ask him how many children they have.	Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?			
Say <i>We have two sons</i> .	Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi.			
	12:00			
<i>One daughter.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	yíge nǚér			
5. <table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr> <td>nǚér</td> <td>女儿</td> <td>女兒</td> </tr> </table>	nǚér	女儿	女兒	
nǚér	女儿	女兒		
How do you say <i>daughter</i> in Mandarin?	nǚér			
◀ Did you hear the falling/rising and rising tones in those two words? Say again <i>one daughter</i> .	yíge nǚér			
And now say <i>one son</i> .	yíge érzi			
Say <i>We have one daughter</i> .	Wǒmen yǒu yíge nǚér.			
Do you remember how to say <i>She's with my wife</i> .	Tā gēn wǒ de tàitai zài yìqǐ.			
Say <i>My wife and I</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ.			
How would you say <i>My wife and I would like to drink something</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ xiǎng hē yìdiǎnr dōngxi.			
Say <i>Please give me water</i> .	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ shuǐ.			
Now say <i>My wife and I have three children</i> .	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.			
Say <i>We have two sons, one daughter</i> .	Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi, yíge nǚér.			
	15:00			
Someone's knocking on the door. Do you remember how to ask <i>Who is it?</i>	Shéi?			
And now say <i>Please come in</i> .	Qǐng jìn.			
How would you ask her how many children she has?	Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?			
She says <i>I don't have any sons</i> . (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Wǒ méiyǒu érzi.			
You don't need the measure word when you say you don't have any sons. Tell me again you have no sons.	Wǒ méiyǒu érzi.			
Now say <i>But we have four daughters</i>	Kěshì wǒmen yǒu sì gè nǚér.			
Ask <i>How many children?</i>	Jǐ gè xiǎoháir?			
Say <i>We have four children</i> .	Wǒmen yǒu sì gè xiǎoháir.			

Say *A lot of children* or *that's a lot of children.* Hěn duō xiǎoháir.  
 Now say *We have five children.* Wǒmen yǒu wǔ gè xiǎoháir.  
 Say *three sons.* sān gè érzi  
 Do you remember how to say *two daughters?* liǎng gè nǚér  
 Now say *We have one daughter.* Wǒmen yǒu yí gè nǚér.  
*one son* yí gè érzi

18:00

You want to say *My son is grown up.*  
 First here's the word *big* in Mandarin (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

6.	dà	大	大
----	----	---	---

▶ This word is pronounced with a falling tone.

Say again *big.* dà

Here's how to say *My son is very grown up.* Wǒ de érzi hěn dà le.  
 (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

With the 了(le) ending the word *big* refers only to maturity, not the person's size. It's like saying my son had gotten very big.

Say this again. Wǒ de érzi hěn dà le.

Try to ask *Is your son very grown up?* Nǐ de érzi hěn dà le ma?

Answer *Yes. He is very grown up.* Shì. Tā hěn dà le.

Use 是(shì) for *yes.*

Ask if the daughter is very grown up. Nǚér hěn dà le ma?

*She is not very big.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Dà bú shì hěn dà.

21:00

Remember that you don't need the 了(le) with the negative.

Say *She is not very big.* Dà bú shì hěn dà.

Try to say *The son is not very big.* Érzi bú shì hěn dà.

Ask *Where is he?* Tā zài nǎr?

Say *He's in America.* Tā zài Měiguó.

How do you say *together* in Mandarin? yìqǐ

Now say *He's with my wife together.* Tā gēn wǒ de tàitai zài yìqǐ.

Ask *How many children he has.*

Nǐ yǒu jǐgè xiǎoháir?

Now say *We have four children.*

Wǒmen yǒu sì gè xiǎoháir.

*They are very grown up. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)* Tāmen hěn dà le.

5.	tāmen	他们	他們
----	-------	----	----

◀ *They* is pronounced with a combination of high level and mid-rising tones.<sup>2</sup>

Say *They.*

Tāmen.

Say *They are here.*

Tāmen zài zhèr.

24:00

Say *They're not in America.*

Tāmen bú zài Měiguó.

How would you say *They are with me?*

Tāmen gēn wǒ zài yìqǐ.

Ask him how many children he and his wife have.

Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?

Say *My wife and I have three children.*

Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.

Now say *We have three children.*

Wǒmen yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.

Say *We have two sons.*

Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi.

Say *They are very grown up.*

Tāmen hěn dà le.

Say *We have one daughter.*

Wǒmen yǒu yí gè nǚér.

How would you say your daughter is not very big?

Nǚér bú shì hěn dà.

Xiànzài qǐng nǐ gēn Chén Tàitai duìhuà.	现在请你跟陈太太对话。
Now a conversation with Mrs. Chen.	現在請你跟陳太太對話。

Answer her when she speaks to you.

<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	陳太太：你好。
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Hello.	陳太太：你好。
<b>You:</b> Chén Tàitai, Nǐ hǎo.	你：陈太太，你好。
<b>You:</b> Hello, Mrs. Chen.	你：陳太太，你好。

27:00

<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?	陳太太：你是美国人吗？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Are you American?	陳太太：你是美國人嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shì. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.	你：是。我是美国人。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I am American.	你：是。我是美國人。

<sup>2</sup> 他们(*they/tāmen*) is pronounced with a high level tone, followed by a neutral tone.

You are to assume the following role: you're a gentleman of middle age. You have a wife and three children: two sons and one daughter. And they're all grown up. They're with you in Beijing.

Zài Běijīng.	在北京。
In Beijing.	在北京。

Try to answer her questions.

<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐ de tàitai zài nǎr?	陈太太：你的太太在哪儿？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Where is your wife?	陳太太：你的太太在哪兒？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Tā zài zhèr. Zài Běijīng. Tā gēn wǒ zài yìqǐ.	你：她在这儿。在北京。她跟我在一起。
<b>You:</b> She's here. In Beijing. She is together with me.	你：她在這兒。在北京。她跟我在一起。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐmen yǒu xiǎoháir ma?	陈太太：你们有小孩儿吗？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Do you have children?	陳太太：你們有小孩兒嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu xiǎoháir.	你：有。我们有小孩儿。
<b>You:</b> Yes. I have children.	你：有。我們有小孩兒。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè érzi?	陈太太：你们有几个儿子？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> You have how many sons?	陳太太：你們有幾個兒子？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi.	你：我们有两个儿子。
<b>You:</b> We have two sons.	你：我們有兩個兒子。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐmen yǒu nǚér ma?	陈太太：你们有女儿吗？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Do you have any daughters?	陳太太：你們有女兒嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu yí gè nǚér.	你：有。我们有一个女儿。
<b>You:</b> Yes. We have one daughter.	你：有。我們有一個女兒。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǚér hěn dà le ma?	陈太太：女儿很她了吗？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Is she grown up?	陳太太：女兒很她了嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shì. Tā hěn dà le.	你：是。他很他了。
<b>You:</b> Yes. She is grown up.	你：是。她很他了。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Xiànzài tāmen zài nǎr? Tāmen gēn nǐ de tàitai yìqǐ ma?	陈太太：现在他们在哪儿？他们跟你的太太一起吗？
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> Where are they now? Are they together with your wife?	陳太太：現在他們在哪兒？他們跟你的太太一起嗎？
<b>Nǐ:</b> Shì. Tāmen zài gēn wǒ de tàitai zài yìqǐ.	你：是。他们在跟我的太太在一起。
<b>You:</b> Yes. They are together with my wife.	你：是。他們在跟我的太太在一起。
<b>Chén Tàitai:</b> Nǐ pǔtōnghuà shuō de hěn hǎo.	陈太太：你普通话说说的很好。
<b>Mrs. Chen:</b> You speak Mandarin very well.	陳太太：你普通話說的很好。
<b>Nǐ:</b> Xièxie nǐ.	你：谢谢你。
<b>You:</b> Thank you.	你：謝謝你。

This is the end of unit 20.

30:00

## Unit 21

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	wait a moment	děng yìhuǐr	等一会儿	等一會兒
2.	young/younger	xiǎo	小	小
3.	really	zhēn de	真的	真的
4.	bathroom/restroom	xǐshǒujiān	洗手间	洗手間
5.	family	jiārén	家人	家人

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 21 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(Qǐng tīng zhè duàn Jones Xiānsheng gēn Lǐu Tàitai de duìhuà)

Listen to this conversation between Mr. Jones and Mrs. Liu.

In it, you will hear Mrs. Liu ask

*Can you wait a moment?*

Nǐ kěyǐ děng yìhuǐr ma?

1.	děng yìhuǐr	等一会儿	等一會兒
----	-------------	------	------

(qǐng tīng)

Lǐu Tàitai: Shéi?	柳太太: 谁?
Mrs. Liu: Who is it?	柳太太: 誰?
Jones Xiānsheng: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ shì Bill Jones. Wǒ shì Měiguó rén kěshì wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn pǔtōnghuà.	Jones 先生: 你好。我是 Bill Jones。我是美国人可是我会说普通话。
Mr. Jones: Hello. I am Bill Jones. I am an American but I can speak Mandarin.	Jones 先生: 你好。我是 Bill Jones。我是美國人可是我會說普通話。
Lǐu Tàitai: Ó. Nǐ shì Jones Xiānsheng. Qǐng jìn.	柳太太: 哦。你是 Jones 先生。請進。
Mrs. Liu: Oh. You're Mr. Jones. Please come in.	柳太太: 哦。你是 Jones 先生。請進。
Jones Xiānsheng: Xièxie nǐ. Qǐngwèn, nǐ de xiānsheng zài nǎr?	Jones 先生: 謝謝你。請問, 你的先生在哪兒?
Mr. Jones: Thank you. May I ask, where is your husband?	Jones 先生: 謝謝你。請問, 你的先生在哪兒?
Lǐu Tàitai: Wǒ de xiānsheng zài zhèr. Nǐ kěyǐ děng yìhuǐr ma?	柳太太: 我的先生在這兒。你可以等一会儿嗎?
Mrs. Liu: My husband is here. Can you wait a moment?	柳太太: 我的先生在這兒。你可以等一會兒嗎?
Jones Xiānsheng: Kěyǐ. Xièxie nǐ.	Jones 先生: 可以。謝謝你。
Mr. Jones: Yes. Thank you.	Jones 先生: 可以。謝謝你。

<b>Lǚ Tàitai:</b> Nǐ de tàitai gēn nǐ yìqǐ zài Běijīng ma?	柳太太: 你的太太跟你一起在北京吗?
<b>Mrs. Liu:</b> Is your wife together with you in Beijing?	柳太太: 你的太太跟你一起在北京嗎?
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Shì. Tā yě zài Běijīng.	Jones 先生: 是。她也在北京。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> Yes. She is also in Beijing.	Jones 先生: 是。她也在北京。
<b>Lǚ Tàitai:</b> Xiǎoháir ne? Tāmen zài zhèr ma?	柳太太: 小孩儿呢? 他们在这儿吗?
<b>Mrs. Liu:</b> How about your children? Are they here?	柳太太: 小孩兒呢? 他們在這兒嗎?
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Tāmen bú zài zhèr. Tāmen zài Měiguó.	Jones 先生: 他们不在这儿。他们在美国。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> They are not here. They are in America.	Jones 先生: 他們不在這兒。他們在美國。
<b>Lǚ Tàitai:</b> Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?	柳太太: 你们有几个小孩儿?
<b>Mrs. Liu:</b> How many children do you have?	柳太太: 你們有幾個小孩兒?
<b>Jones Xiānsheng:</b> Wǒmen yǒu sān gè érzi. Tāmen hěn dà le.	Jones 先生: 我们三个儿子。他们很大了。
<b>Mr. Jones:</b> We have three sons. They are all grown up.	Jones 先生: 我們有三個兒子。他們很大了。

(zài tīng yíci) (The conversation above is repeated)

Someone's knocking at the door.  
How would you ask *Who is it?*

Shéi?

And now say *Please come in.*

Qǐng jìn.

Say *a son* or literally, *one son.*

yí gè érzi

(qǐng shuō) Please say *He is very big.*

Tā hěn dà le. \_\_\_\_\_

03:00

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) Now please say  
*The son is very big or very grown up.*

Érzi hěn dà le.

Here's how to say *the older son.*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

dà érzi

The word that means big or grown up 大(dà) can also mean *more grown up* or *older.*  
Say again *the older son.*

dà érzi

Try to say *the older daughter.*

dà nǚér

And how would you say  
*The daughter is very big?*

Nǚér hěn dà le.

Remember you use the le (了) ending when you say that someone is big or grown up.

Now say again *the older daughter.*

dà nǚér

(qǐng shuō) Please say (qǐng shuō) <i>We have an older daughter.</i> Literally, <i>one older daughter.</i>	Wǒmen yǒu yí gè dà nǚér.
Do you remember how to ask <i>How many children do you have?</i>	Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?
(qǐng shuō) <i>My wife and I.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ.
<i>My wife and I have an older daughter.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ yǒu yí gè dà nǚér.
Here's how to say <i>Wait one moment.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Děng yìhuǐr.
◀ The tones in that expression are falling/rising, falling and falling/rising. Say <i>Wait one moment.</i>	Děng yìhuǐr.
Now try to ask <i>Can you wait one moment?</i>	Nǐ kěyǐ děng yìhuǐr ma? Nǐ kě bù kěyǐ děng yìhuǐr?
(qǐng shuō) <i>We live.</i>	Wǒmen zhù.
<i>We live in America.</i>	Wǒmen zhù zài Měiguó.
Try to say <i>Located along with the children.</i>	Gēn xiǎoháir zài yìqǐ.
Ask <i>How many children do you have?</i>	Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?
Now say <i>My wife and I have three children.</i>	Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.
(qǐng shuō) <i>The children are in America.</i>	Xiǎoháir zài Měiguó.
(qǐng shuō) <i>They are in America.</i>	Tāmen zài Měiguó.
Ask <i>Where are they?</i>	Tāmen zài nǎr?
Try to say <i>The daughters are here.</i>	Nǚér zài zhèr.
Tell me that the daughters are very grown up.	Nǚér hěn dà le.
Now say <i>the older daughter.</i>	dà nǚér
<i>The older daughter is here.</i>	Dà nǚér zài zhèr.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>The older sons are here.</i>	Dà érzi zài zhèr.
<i>What about the younger daughter?</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Xiǎo nǚér ne?

06:00

09:00

2.	xiǎo	小	小
What's the Mandarin word <i>young</i> or <i>younger</i> ?		xiǎo	



◀ This word has a falling/rising tone.  
Say it again.

xiǎo

(qǐng shuō) *The younger daughter.*

xiǎo nǚér

(qǐngwèn) Please ask.  
*What about the younger daughter?*

Xiǎo nǚér ne?

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *The younger son.*

Xiǎo érzi.

12:00

Now try to say *My son is very young. Is is understood.*

Wǒ de érzi hěn xiǎo.

And how would you say *Our son is very young.*

Wǒmen de érzi hěn xiǎo.

Try to say *Our son isn't very grown up.*

Wǒmen de érzi bú shì hěn dà.

(qǐng shuō) *He's very young.*

Tā hěn xiǎo

*He's really very young. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)* Tā zhēn de hěn xiǎo.

3.	zhēn de	真的	真的
----	---------	----	----

◀ *Really* starts with a high level tone, followed by a soft falling tone.<sup>1</sup>  
Say again *Really*.

Zhēn de.

Tell me again that *He's really very young.*

Tā zhēn de hěn xiǎo.

To ask *Really?* All you need to do is use question intonation.  
Try it.

Zhēn de?

◀ Did you hear the rising tone added to the end?  
Ask again *Really?*

Zhēn de?

And how would you say *Yes. Really.* Pay attention to the tonality.

Shì. Zhēn de.

Say again *He is really very young.*

Tā zhēn de hěn xiǎo.

Try to say *He really isn't very grown up.*

Tā bú shì hěn dà.

Ask Mr. and Mrs. Jones  
*Where is your daughter?*

Nǐmen de nǚér zài nǎr?

15:00

Now say *My wife and I have two daughters.*

Wǒ de tàitai hé wǒ yǒu liǎng gè nǚér.

Try to ask  
*The older daughter of the younger daughter?*

Dà nǚér háishì xiǎo nǚér?

*The older daughter.*

dà nǚér

<sup>1</sup> The second syllable is pronounced with a neutral tone.

Try to say *It isn't the younger daughter.*      Bú shì xiǎo nǚér.

*Really?*      Zhēn de?

Ask the man where the children are.      Xiǎoháir zài nǎr?

*Wait one moment.*      Děng yìhuǐr.

*Where is the bathroom?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)      Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

4.	xǐshǒujiān	洗手间	洗手間
----	------------	-----	-----

◀ The tones are rising, falling/rising and rising.<sup>2</sup>

Ask where the bathroom is located.      Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

How would she say that *It's over there?*      Zài nàr. Xǐshǒujiān zài nàr.

18:00

(qǐngwèn) *Really?*      Zhēn de?

And now say *Really, it's over there.*      Zhēn de. Zài nàr.

How do you say *the younger daughter?*      xiǎo nǚér

Say *She isn't very grown up.*      Tā bú shì hěn dà.

(qǐng shuō) *The older son.*      Dà érzi.

(qǐng shuō) *The older daughter.*      Dà nǚér.

(qǐng shuō) *Our older daughter.*      Wǒmen de dà nǚér.

Speaking to Mr. and Mrs. Jones, say  
*Your older daughter.*      Nǐmen de dà nǚér.

Ask where the bathroom is.      Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

(qǐng shuō) *The younger daughters.*      Xiǎo nǚér.

Here's how to say *family.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	jiārén	家人	家人
----	--------	----	----

◀ *Family* is pronounced with high level and falling tones.<sup>3</sup>      jiārén

<sup>2</sup> 洗手间 (*restroom/xǐshǒujiān*) is pronounced with falling/rising, falling/rising and high level tones. As pronunciation combination rule #3 states, with two consecutive falling/rising tones, the first tone becomes a rising tone. As for the third syllable, the Chinese speaker's pronunciation is correct, but the English speaker is wrong in saying that it is pronounced with a rising tone.

<sup>3</sup> 家人 (*family/jiārén*) is pronounced with a high level tone and a rising tone. This is an error, but the pronunciation of the Chinese speaker is correct.

Say again <i>family</i> or literally, <i>home people</i> .	jiārén	
(qǐng shuō) <i>My family</i> .	Wǒ de jiārén.	
Try to match the rising and falling tones. (xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Your family</i> .	Nǐ de jiārén.	21:00
Ask the man where his family is.	Nǐ de jiārén zài nǎr?	
Now ask just <i>Where are they?</i>	Tāmen zài nǎr?	
(qǐng shuō) <i>We live in America</i> .	Wǒmen zhù zài Měiguó.	
Try to say <i>The younger daughters are in America</i> .	Xiǎo nǚér zài Měiguó.	
And now say <i>The older son</i> .	Dà érzi.	
Tell me that the older son is in Beijing.	Dà érzi zài Běijīng.	
Do you remember how to say that someone is with you? (qǐng shuō) <i>The older son with us is located together</i> .	Dà érzi gēn wǒmen zài yìqǐ.	
Now try to say <i>The older son is here with us</i> . Since the emphasis is on the location rather than with us, you don't need <i>together</i> .	Dà érzi gēn wǒmen zài zhèr.	24:00
Say again <i>The older son is here with us</i> .	Dà érzi gēn wǒmen zài zhèr.	
You want to tell the man and his wife <i>You have a very big family</i> . Literally, <i>Your home people very many</i> . Try it.	Nǐmen de jiārénhěn duō.	
Try to tell them <i>Your family is really very big</i> .	Nǐmen de jiārén zhēn de hěn duō.	
Now imagine that you are in Beijing with your family.	Nǐ gēn nǐ de jiārén zài Běijīng.	
You are in Beijing with your family. You have two sons and one daughter. You've all been invited to a colleague's home. When you arrive, you knock on her door. How does she ask <i>Who is it?</i>	Shéi?	
You identify yourself. How does she tell you to <i>Please come in?</i>	Qǐng jìn.	
How does she greet you?	Nǐ hǎo.	
She will ask you a few questions. In your answers because you're speaking for your whole family, say <i>we</i> and <i>our</i> rather than <i>I</i> and <i>my</i> .		
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Tā shì nǐmen de érzi ma?	女人: 他是你们的儿子吗?	
<b>Woman:</b> Is he your son?	女人: 他是你们的兒子嗎?	

Nǐ: Shì. Tā shì wǒmen de érzi.	你: 是。他是我们的儿子。
You: Yes. He is our son.	你: 是。他是我們的兒子。
Nǚrén: Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè érzi?	女人: 你们有几个儿子?
Woman: How many sons do you have?	女人: 你們有幾個兒子?
Nǐ: Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi.	你: 我们有两个儿子。
You: We have two sons.	你: 我們有兩個兒子。
Nǚrén: Nǐmen yǒu nǚér ma?	女人: 你们有女儿吗?
Woman: Do you have a daughter?	女人: 你們有女兒嗎?
Nǐ: Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu yí gè nǚér.	你: 有。我们有一个女儿。
You: Yes. I have one daughter.	你: 有。我們有一個女兒。
	27:00
Nǚrén: Nǐmen de nǚér hěn dà le ma?	女人: 你们的女儿很大了吗?
Woman: Is your daughter grown up?	女人: 你們的女兒很大了嗎?
Tell her <i>Yes. She's very grown up.</i>	你: Shì. Tā hěn dà le.
Nǚrén: Tā huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?	女人: 她会说普通话吗?
Nǚrén: Tā huì bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà?	女人: 她会不会说普通话?
Woman: Can she speak Mandarin?	女人: 她會說普通話嗎? 女人: 她會不會說普通話?
Say <i>No. She can't speak Mandarin.</i>	你: Bú huì. Tā bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà.
Nǚrén: Nǐmen de érzi zài nǎr? Tā xiǎng zuò shénme?	女人: 你们的儿子在哪儿? 他想做什么?
Woman: Where is your son? What would he like to do?	女人: 你們的兒子在哪兒? 你想做什麼?
Ask her where the bathroom is.	你: Qǐngwèn, xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?
Nǚrén: Zài nǎr. Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr.	女人: 在哪儿。洗手间在哪儿。
Woman: It's over there. The bathroom is over there.	女人: 在哪兒。洗手間在哪兒。
How does she ask <i>What are you doing?</i>	Nǚrén: Nǐ zuò shénme?
Do you remember how to tell her <i>We are going to go over there?</i>	你: Wǒmen yào qù nǎr.
How does the woman say <i>You have a very big family?</i>	Nǚrén: Nǐmen de jiārén hěn duō.
Try to say <i>Not very many.</i>	你: Bú shì hěn duō.
Now she says <i>Your family is really big.</i>	Nǚrén: Nǐmen de jiārén zhēn de hěn duō.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Yes. We have a lot of children.</i>	你: Shì. Wǒmen yǒu hěn duō xiǎoháir.
This is the end of unit 21.	30:00

## Unit 22

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	inside	lǐ	里	裏
2.	Hong Kong	Xiānggǎng	香港	香港
3.	airplane	fēijī	飞机	飛機
4.	sit/travel/ride	zuò	坐	坐
5.	airport	fēijīchǎng	飞机场	飛機場
6.	field	chǎng	场	場
7.	thousand	qiān	千	千
8.	hour	xiǎoshí	小时	小時

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 22 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐmen yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?	女人：你们有几个小孩儿？
<b>Woman:</b> How many children do you have?	女人：你們有幾個小孩兒？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒmen yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.	男人：我們有三個小孩兒。
<b>Man:</b> We have three children.	男人：我們有三個小孩兒。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐmen de xiǎoháir shì bú shì zài zhèr?	女人：你们的小孩儿是不是在这儿？
<b>Woman:</b> Are your children here?	女人：你們的小孩兒是不是在這兒？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Shì. Tāmen zài zhèr.	男人：是。他们在这儿。
<b>Man:</b> Yes. They are here.	男人：是。他們在這兒。

Starting with this lesson, you'll receive more and more instructions in Mandarin like this.

Qǐng yòng pǔtōnghuà shuō.	请用普通话说。
Please use Mandarin to speak.	請用普通話說。

*Hello.* Please say *Hello* in Mandarin.  
(qǐng yòng pǔtōnghuà shuō) *Hello.*

Nǐ hǎo.

This is a necessary step to understanding and speaking Mandarin without translating from English. You may find it a little difficult at first. Don't hesitate to do this to do this lesson over several times if necessary.

(wèn) Ask.

(wèn) *How are you?*

Nǐ hǎo ma?

Ask it again	在问一次
(zài wèn yí cì)	在問一次

(zài wèn yíci)

Nǐ hǎo ma?

(yòng pǔtōnghuà shuō)

Say in Mandarin *the older son*.

dà érzi

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*Our son is very grown up.*

Wǒmen de érzi hěn dà le.

(qǐng shuō) *The younger daughter.*

Xiǎo nǚér.

Ask me how many children I have.

Nǐ yǒu jǐ gè xiǎoháir?

(qǐng shuō) *We have three children.*

Wǒmen yǒu sān gè xiǎoháir.

(wèn) *Are they with you? Literally, They with you are located together?*

Use the plural *you*.

Tāmen gēn nǐmen zài yìqǐ ma?

03:00

Say that *They are*.

Shì.

(qǐng wèn) *Where is the bathroom?*

Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

Now say the bathroom is over there.

Xǐshǒujiān zài nàr.

(qǐng shuō nǐ de jiārén zài Měiguó)

Wǒ de jiārén zài Měiguó.

我的家人在美国。

My family is in America.

我的家人在美國。

(qǐng shuō nǐ de jiārén zài Zhōngguó)

Wǒ de jiārén zài Zhōngguó.

我的家人在中国。

My family is in China.

我的家人在中國。

Try to say that your family is with you.

Wǒ de jiārén gēn wǒ zài yìqǐ.

And how would you ask *How many people?*

Jǐ gè rén?

*How many people are there in your family?*

Literally, *You home inside has how many*

*people?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

1.

里

里

裏

◀ *Inside* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

(qǐng shuō) *Inside.*

Lǐ.

(zài wèn yíci) *How many people?*

Jǐ gè rén?

*How many people are there in your family?*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

Notice that you don't use 的(de) with *inside*.

(qǐngwèn)

*How many people are there in your family?*

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

06:00

(qǐng shuō) *My home inside.*

Wǒ jiā lǐ.

(shì shì shuō)

Try to say.

试试说。

試使說。

(shì shì shuō) *Has four people.*

yǒu sì gè rén.

(qǐng shuō)

*There are four people in my family.*

Wǒ jiā lǐ yǒu sì gè rén.

She says *We're going to go to Hong Kong.*

Wǒmen yào qù Xiānggǎng.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

2. Xiānggǎng

香港

香港

◀ (qǐng shuō) *Hong Kong* using high level and falling/rising tones.

Xiānggǎng.

Try to ask me if I would like to go to Hong Kong.

Nǐ xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng ma?

◀ The first part of *Hong Kong* sounds like the word that means *would like*. But *would like* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Xiǎng.

◀ While the first part of *Hong Kong* has a high level tone.

Xiāng.

(qǐng shuō) *I'd like to go to Hong Kong.*

Wǒ xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng.

(shì shì shuō) *We're going to go to Hong Kong tomorrow.*

Remember the word order.

Wǒmen míngtiān yào qù Xiānggǎng.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*There are four people in my family.*

Wǒ jiā lǐ yǒu sì gè rén.

09:00

Now try to say

*My family is going to go to Hong Kong.*

Wǒ de jiārén yào qù Xiānggǎng.

Now you're planning that trip to Hong Kong. Because of the distances involved, travel between two cities in China is usually done by train or plane rather than by car.

Here's the word *airplane*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

3.

fēijī

飞机

飛機

◀ These are two high level tones.

(qǐng shuō) *airplane*

fēijī

(qǐngwèn)

*Is your family going to go to Hong Kong?*

Nǐ de jiārén yào qù Xiānggǎng ma?

Nǐ de jiārén yào bú yào qù Xiānggǎng?

*Are you going to take a plane?*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐmen yào zuò fēijī qù ma?  
Nǐmen yào bú yào zuò fēijī qù?

4.	zuò	坐	坐
----	-----	---	---

◀ The word 坐 (zuò) is pronounced with a falling tone.

(qǐng shuō)

*Take a plane. Or literally, Take a plane to go.*

Zuò fēijī qù.

(qǐng shuō nǐmen yào fēijī qù)

Ask me where my family is.

*My family is in America*

Wǒmen yào zuò fēijī qù.

Nǐ de jiārén zài nǎr?

Wǒ de jiārén zài Měiguó.

12:00

(qǐng shuō) *My son is here.*

*He's very grown up.*

Wǒ de érzi zài zhèr.

Tā hěn dà le.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *The children are here.*

(qǐng shuō) *But my wife is in America.*

(shì shì shuō) *She is going to take a plane.*

*She is going to take a plane to Hong Kong.*

Ask me how many people there are in my family.

(qǐng shuō)

*There are three people in our family.*

*We have two younger sons.*

*One older daughter.*

(qǐng shuō) *Big or older.*

*Little or younger.*

(qǐng shuō) *Enough or it's enough.*

Ask me if I can speak Mandarin.

(qǐng shuō) *I can speak a little.*

Say that you understand what she is saying.

Kěshì wǒ de tàitai zài Měiguó.

Tā yào zuò fēijī qù.

Tā yào zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu sān gè rén.

Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè xiǎo érzi.

Yí gè dà nǚér.

15:00

dà

xiǎo

Gòu le.

Nǐ huì shuō pǔtōnghuà ma?

Nǐ huì bú huì shuō pǔtōnghuà?

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr.

Wǒ míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.



(qǐng shuō) Three people.	Sān gè rén.
(qǐng shuō) <i>In my family.</i>	Wǒ jiā lǐ.
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) <i>There are five people in our family.</i>	Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu wǔ gè rén.
(qǐng wèn) <i>Where is the bathroom?</i>	Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?
<i>Wait one moment.</i>	Děng yìhuǐr.
Ask me if I would like to go to Hong Kong.	Nǐ xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng ma? Nǐ xiǎng bú xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng?
	18:00
(Xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Yes. We're going to take a plane.</i>	Xiǎng. Wǒmen yào zuò fēijī qù.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We would like.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng.
(shì shì shuō) <i>We would like to take a plane to Hong Kong.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.
<i>Where is the airport? (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)</i>	Fēijīchǎng zài nǎr?
5.	fēijīchǎng 飞机场 飛機場
6.	chǎng 场 場
(qǐng shuō) <i>Airport or literally, plane field.</i> ◀ <i>Field has a falling/rising tone.</i>	Fēijīchǎng.
(wèn) <i>Where is the airport?</i>	Fēijīchǎng zài nǎr?
(qǐng shuō) <i>We would like to take a plane</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng zuò fēijī qù.
<i>We would like to take a plane to Hong Kong.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.
Ask me how many people are in my family.	Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?
	21:00
(qǐng shuō) <i>There are five people in my family.</i>	Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu wǔ gè rén.
(shì shì shuō) <i>We're going to go to the airport.</i>	Wǒmen yào qù fēijīchǎng.
<i>We're going to take a plane to Hong Kong.</i>	Wǒmen yào zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.
Ask <i>How much does it cost?</i>	Duōshǎo qián?
Remember you literally ask <i>How much money?</i> (zài wèn yíci)	Duōshǎo qián?
The answer is <i>Two thousand Renminbi.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	liǎng qiān kuài Rénmínbì

7.	qiān	千	千
----	------	---	---

(qǐng shuō) *Thousand.*

Qiān.

(zài wèn yí cì) *How much money?*

Duōshǎo qián?

◀ The difference between the words for *money* and *thousand* is that *thousand* is pronounced with a high level tone and the word *money* with a rising tone.

(zài shuō yí cì) *Two thousand Renminbi.*

Liǎng qiān kuài Rénmínbì.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *It's too much.*

Tài duō le.

(qǐng shuō) *It's enough.*

Gòu le.

(qǐng wèn) *Is it enough?*

Gòu ma?

Gòu bú gòu?

Air travel is measured by the time a trip will take. Here's how to say *hour* in Mandarin

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) xiǎoshí

24:00

8.	xiǎoshí	小时	小時
----	---------	----	----

◀ The tones are falling/rising and falling.<sup>1</sup>

(zài shuō yí cì) *hour*

xiǎoshí

*How many hours?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

(zài wèn yí cì) *How many hours?*

Jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

(shì shì shuō) *Three hours.*

Sān gè xiǎoshí.

(qǐng shuō)

*I would like to take a plane to Hong Kong.*

Wǒ xiǎng zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.

*I have 40 Renminbi.*

Wǒ yǒu sì shí kuài Rénmínbì.

(qǐng shuō) *45 units*

sì shí wǔ kuài

(shì shì shuō) *It is not enough.*

Bú gòu.

(qǐng shuō) *Two thousand Renminbi.*

Liǎng qiān kuài Rénmínbì.

(qǐng shuō) *We have a lot of money.*

Wǒmen yǒu hěn duō qián.

(shì shì shuō) *We have enough money.*  
Remember the ending.

Wǒmen qián gòu le.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō nǐmen yào qù Xiānggǎng)

27:00

<sup>1</sup> This is an error. 小时 (*hour/xiǎoshí*) is pronounced with a falling/rising (3<sup>rd</sup> tone) and rising tone (2<sup>nd</sup> tone)

Now please say that you're going to go to Hong Kong.

Wǒmen yào qù Xiānggǎng.

Did you say *we*?

(qǐng shuō) *My wife is in Hong Kong*

Wǒ de tàitai zài Xiānggǎng.

(qǐng shuō) *The children are with me.*

Xiǎoháir zài gēn wǒ yìqǐ.

(qǐng wèn)

*How many people are there in your family?*

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

(qǐng shuō)

*There are four people in my family.*

Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu sì gè rén.

(qǐng shuō)

*We would like to take a plane to Hong Kong.*

Wǒmen xiǎng zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.

You want to ask *How many hours is it?*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Yào jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

In Mandarin, you ask literally, *It's going to how many hours* meaning, *It's going to be.*

Ask how many hours it is.

Yào jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

(huí dá)

回答。

Answer.

回答。

(huí dá) *It's going to be three hours.*

Yào sān gè xiǎoshí.

This is the end of unit 22.

30:00

## Unit 23

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	adult	dàrén	大人	大人
2.	hundred	bǎi	百	百
3.	far	yuǎn	远	遠
4.	flight	bānjī	班机	班機
5.	which	nǎ	哪	哪
6.	walk/go	zǒu	走	走
7.	straight	yī zhí wǎng qián	一直往前	一直往前

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 23 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐmen jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?	女人：你们家里有多少人？
<b>Woman:</b> How many people are there in your family?	女人：你們家裏有幾個人？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè dàrén. Liǎng gè xiǎoháir.	男人：我們有兩個大人。兩個小孩兒。
<b>Man:</b> We have two adults, two young children.	男人：我們有兩個大人。兩個小孩兒。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐmen yǒu liǎng gè érzi ma?	女人：你们有两个儿子吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Do you have two sons?	女人：你們有兩個女兒嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Méiyǒu. Wǒmen yǒu yí gè érzi. Yí gè nǚér.	男人：没有。我们有一个儿子。一个女儿。
<b>Man:</b> No. We have one son one daughter.	男人：沒有。我們有一個兒子。一個女兒。

In this conversation you heard *two older people* meaning *two adults*.

Liǎng gè dàrén.

1.	dàrén	大人	大人
----	-------	----	----

(zài tīng yíci) (the conversation above is repeated)

(qǐng huí dá zhè gè wèntí) Please answer this question.

(Pǔtōnghuà) In Mandarin *airplane*.

(zěnmē shuō?)	怎么说？
How do you say?	怎麼說？
(zěnmē shuō?)	
(Pǔtōnghuà <i>airplane</i> zěnmē shuō?)	fēijī

(Pǔtōnghuà <i>airport zěnmē shuō?</i> )	fēijīchǎng
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>We're going to go to the airport.</i>	Wǒmen yào qù fēijīchǎng.
<i>We're going to take a plane.</i>	Wǒmen yào zuò fēijī qù.
Did you say <i>take a plane to go?</i> (shì shì shuō) <i>We would like to take a plane to Hong Kong.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng.
Ask how much it costs.	Duōshǎo qián?
(Pǔtōnghuà <i>thousand zěnmē shuō?</i> )	qiān
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Two thousand Renminbi.</i>	Liǎng qiān kuài Renminbi.
(qǐng shuō) <i>family</i>	jiārén
Ask me how many people are in my family.	Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?
(qǐng shuō) <i>There are five people in our family.</i>	Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu wǔ gè rén.
(qǐngwèn) <i>How many people?</i>	Jǐ gè rén?
(wén) <i>How many people are there in your family? Use the plural.</i>	Nǐmen jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?
(shì shì shuō) <i>Two older people meaning two adults.</i>	Liǎng gè dàrén.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Three children or literally, three young children.</i>	Sān gè xiǎoháir.
(shì shì shuō) <i>We have two young daughters.</i>	Wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè xiǎo nǚér.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>We have one older son.</i>	Wǒmen yǒu yí gè dà érzi.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>The son is very grown up.</i>	Érzi hěn dà le.
(qǐngwèn) <i>Where are the children?</i>	Xiǎoháir zài nǎr?
(xiànzài qǐngwèn) <i>Where are they?</i>	Tāmen zài nǎr?
(qǐng shuō) <i>The daughters are in America.</i>	Nǚér zài Měiguó.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>The son is with me.</i>	Érzi gēn wǒ zài yìqǐ.

03:00

06:00

(qǐng shuō)

*There are a lot of people our family.*

Wǒmen jiā lǐ yǒu hěn duō rén.

Ask where the bathroom is.

Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

Answer *Over there.*

Zài nàr

(xiànzài shì shì shuō)

*My wife is in Hong Kong.*

Wǒ de tàitai zài Xiānggǎng.

(qǐng shuō nǐ yào qù Xiānggǎng)

Wǒ yào qù Xiānggǎng.

我要去香港。

I am going to go to Hong Kong.

我要去香港。

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *I'm going to take a plane.*

Wǒ yào zuò fēijī qù.

(qǐngwèn) *Really?*

Zhēn de?

09:00

(xiànzài qǐngwèn)

*Are you going to take a plane to Hong Kong?*

Nǐ yào zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng ma?

Nǐ yào bú yào zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng?

(huí dá) Answer *Yes.*

Yào.

*I have two thousand Renminbi.*

Wǒ yǒu liǎng qiān kuài Rénmínbì.

Ask if it's enough.

Gòu ma?

Gòu bú gòu

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *It's not enough.*

Bú gòu.

*2300 Renminbi. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)*

liǎng qiān sān bǎi kuài Rénmínbì

2.

bǎi

百

百

◀ Using a falling/rising tone say *hundred.*

bǎi

(shì shì shuō) *2400*

liǎng qiān sì bǎi

(Pǔtōnghuà *My family is with me.*

*zěnmē shuō?*)

Wǒ jiārén gēn wǒ zài yìqǐ.

(qǐngwèn) *Where is your family?*

Nǐ de jiārén zài nǎr?

*Wait one moment. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Děng yìhuǐr.

Ask me where I'm going to go.

Nǐ yào qù nǎr?

12:00

(shì shì shuō) *I have 2400 Renminbi.*

Wǒ yǒu liǎng qiān sì bǎi kuài Rénmínbì.

*I'm going to go to Hong Kong. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Wǒ yào qù Xiānggǎng.

(shì shì shuō)

*Tomorrow, I'm going to go to Hong Kong.*

Míngtiān wǒ yào qù Xiānggǎng.

Do you remember how to ask how long a trip will take?

(qǐngwèn) *It's going to be how many hours?* Yào jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

*It's very far. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)*

Hěn yuǎn.

3.	yuǎn	远	遠
----	------	---	---

◀ The word meaning *far* or *it's far* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

(qǐng shuō) *It's far.*

Yuǎn.

(xiànzài shì shì shuō)

*Hong Kong is not very far.*

Xiānggǎng bú shì hěn yuǎn.

60 (zěnmē shuō?)

liù shí

68

liù shí bā

(qǐngwèn) *Is Hong Kong very far?*

Xiānggǎng hěn yuǎn ma?

Xiānggǎng shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?

15:00

(shì shì wèn) *Is it very expensive?*

Hěn guì ma?

Shì bú shì hěn guì?

What's the Chinese number 7?

qī

(shì shì shuō) 70

qī shí

◀ The tones are high level and rising.

(zài shuō yí cì) 70

qī shí

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 17

shí qī

(shì shì shuō) 72

qī shí èr

(qǐng shuō) 75

qī shí wǔ

(xiànzài shì shì shuō) 700

qī bǎi

(qǐng shuō) 2700

liǎng qiān qī bǎi

64

liù shí sì

(qǐng shuō) 74

qī shí sì

*It isn't very far. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Bú shì hěn yuǎn.

(xiànzài shì shì shuō) *It's too far.*

Tài yuǎn le.

18:00

(qǐng shuō) *I would like to take a plane.*

Wǒ xiǎng zuò fēijī qù.

*Which flight?* (qǐng tīng)

Nǎ gè bānjī?

Here's how to say *flight*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

4.	bānjī	班机	班機
----	-------	----	----

◀ That's two high level tones.

(qǐng shuō) *flight*

bānjī

Now the word *which*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	nǎ	哪	哪
----	----	---	---

◀ That's pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

(zài shuō yíci)

nǎ

*Which flight?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǎ gè bānjī?

◀ 个(gè) is the measure word used with flight. It's pronounced with a falling tone.

(shì shì wèn) *Which flight?*

Nǎ gè bānjī?

(shì shì wèn) *Which flight goes to Hong Kong?* Nǎ gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng?

(zài wèn yíci)

*Which flight goes to Hong Kong?*

Nǎ gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng?

(shì shì wèn) *Is Hong Kong very far?*

Xiānggǎng hěn yuǎn ma?

Xiānggǎng shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?

21:00

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*Hong Kong? It isn't very far.*

Xiānggǎng? Bú shì hěn yuǎn.

(wèn) *It's going to be how many hours?*

Yào jǐ gè xiǎoshí?

(qǐng huí dá) Please answer.

*Three hours.*

Sān gè xiǎoshí.

(wèn) *Where is the airport?*

Fēijīchǎng zài nǎr?

*Go straight ahead.* First the word *go*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

6.	zǒu	走	走
----	-----	---	---

◀ This word is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

(zài shuō yíci)

zǒu

Here's how to say *straight ahead*.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

7.	yī zhí wǎng qián	一直往前	一直往前
----	------------------	------	------

◀ The tones are high level, rising, falling/rising and rising.

(qǐng shuō) *Straight ahead.*

Yī zhí wǎng qián.

24:00

(shì shì shuō)

*Go straight ahead.* Literally, *straight ahead, go.* Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.



And how would you say  
*I would like to go to Hong Kong?*

Wǒ xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng.

Use 去(qù) to say *go to*.  
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *Go straight ahead.*

Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

Use 走(zǒu) to describe an ongoing motion. It's like saying *going*.  
(qǐng shuō) *Wait one moment.*

Děng yìhuǐr.

(qǐngwèn) *Which flight goes to Hong Kong?*

Nǎ gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng?

Now listen and repeat. *This flight.*

Zhè gè bānjī

◀ The word *this* is pronounced with a falling tone.  
Say *This flight.*

Zhè gè bānjī

(shì shì shuō) *This flight goes to Hong Kong.*

Zhè gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng.

(qǐngwèn) *Which flight?*

Nǎ gè bānjī?

(qǐng huí dá)

请回答。

Please answer

請回答。

(qǐng huí dá) *This flight.*

Zhè gè bānjī

27:00

(zài shuō yíci) *This flight goes to Hong Kong*

Zhè gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng.

(wèn) *Really?*

Zhēn de?

(qǐng shuō) *Yes. Go straight ahead.*

Shì. Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

(shì shì wèn) *Is it very expensive?*

Hěn guì ma?  
Shì bú shì hěn guì?

(qǐng huí dá) *It's not very expensive.*

Bú shì hěn guì.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *It isn't very far.*

Bú shì hěn yuǎn.

(Pǔtōnghuà *Wait one moment zěnmě shuō?*)

Děng yìhuǐr.

(xiànzài qǐngwèn)  
*Which flight goes to Hong Kong?*

Nǎ gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng?

(shì shì wèn)  
*Does this flight go to Hong Kong?*

Zhè gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng ma?

(qǐng huí dá) *Yes. Go straight ahead.*

Shì. Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

This is the end of unit 23.

30:00

## Unit 24

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	Hong Kong Dollars	gǎngbì	港币	港幣
2.	King's Road	Yīngwáng Dào	英王道	英王道
3.	Maxine's Restaurant	Měixīn fàndiàn	美新饭店	美新飯店
4.	right side	yòubian	右边	右邊
5.	measure word for road	tiáo	条	條
6.	should	yīnggāi	应该	應該
7.	left side	zuǒbian	左边	左邊
8.	then	ránhòu	然后	然後
9.	Mandarin	guóyǔ	国语	國語

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 24 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

<b>Nánrén:</b> Zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng hěn guì ma?	男人：坐飞机去香港很贵吗？
<b>Man:</b> Is taking a plane to Hong Kong very expensive?	男人：坐飛機去香港很貴嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Hěn guì. Nǐmen xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng ma?	女人：很贵。你们想去香港吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Very expensive. You would like to go to Hong Kong?	女人：很貴。你們想去香港嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Xiǎng. Wǒmen yào qù Xiānggǎng. Hěn yuǎn ma?	男人：想。我們要去香港。很远吗？
<b>Man:</b> Yes. We want to go to Hong Kong. Is it far?	男人：想。我們要去香港。很遠嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú shì hěn yuǎn. Yào sān gè xiǎoshí.	女人：不是很远。要三个小时。
<b>Woman:</b> Not very far. About 3 hours.	女人：不是很遠。要三個小時。

(qǐng shuō nǐ shì Měiguó rén)

Please say you are American.

Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Now say that you are going to go to the airport.

Wǒ yào qù fēijī chǎng.

Say that you are going to go to Hong Kong.

Wǒ yào qù Xiānggǎng.

How do you say *With my family*.

Gēn wǒ de jiārén.

Now ask how many people there are in my family.

Nǐ jiā lǐ yǒu jǐ gè rén?

(qǐng shuō) <i>There are five people in my family.</i>	Wǒ jiā lǐ yǒu wǔ gè rén.
(shì shì wèn) <i>In China, is taking the plane very expensive?</i>	Zài Zhōngguó, zuò fēijī hěn guì ma? Zài Zhōngguó, zuò fēijī shì bú shì hěn guì?
70	qī shí
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) 700	qī bǎi
(qǐng shuō) 750 Renminbi	qī bǎi wǔ shí kuài Rénmínbì
(qǐng shuō) 2000 American Dollars	liǎng qián kuài měijīn
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 2400	liǎng qián sì bǎi
(qǐngwèn) <i>Is Hong Kong very far?</i>	Xiānggǎng hěn yuǎn ma? Xiānggǎng shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?
Do you remember how to ask <i>It's going to be how many hours?</i>	Yào jǐ gè xiǎo shì?
(huí dá) <i>It's going to be 14 hours.</i>	Yào shí sì gè xiǎo shì.
(qǐngwèn) <i>Which flight goes to Hong Kong?</i>	Nǎ gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng?
(qǐng huí dá) <i>This flight.</i>	Zhè gè bānjī.
(qǐng shuō) <i>This flight goes to Hong Kong.</i>	Zhè gè bānjī qù Xiānggǎng.
(Pǔtōnghuà <i>far zěnme shuō?</i> )	yuǎn
(zài shuō yíci) <i>Go straight ahead.</i>	Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>To take a plane is very expensive.</i>	Zuò fēijī hěn guì
(qǐngwèn) <i>How much money do you have?</i>	Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo qián?
(huí dá) 64 Renminbi	liù shí sì kuài Rénmínbì
70	qī shí
75 Renminbi	qī shí wǔ kuài Rénmínbì

This is the currency in use in the Mainland. In Hong Kong however, another currency can also be used. Here's how to say *Hong Kong dollars*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

1.	gǎngbì	港幣	港幣
----	--------	----	----

◀ That's a falling/rising tone followed by a falling tone.

(zài shuō yíci) gǎngbì

(shì shì shuō) *I have 70 Hong Kong dollars.* Wǒ yǒu qī shí kuài gǎngbì.

(qǐngwèn) *How much money?* Duōshǎo qián?

(shì shì shuō) *Thank you. I have enough.* Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ gòu le.

Imagine that you've arrived in Hong Kong and that you're looking for directions. Here's how to say *King's Road*. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) 09:00

2.	Yīngwáng Dào	英王道	英王到
----	--------------	-----	-----

▶ The tones are high level, rising and falling.

(qǐng shuō) *King's Road.* Yīngwáng Dào.

(shì shì wèn)  
*Please tell me, where is King's Road* Qǐngwèn, Yīngwáng Dào zài nǎr?

*Go straight ahead. (zěnmē shuō?)* yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu

(qǐng shuō) *go* zǒu

*Where is Maxine's restaurant?*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Měixīn fàndiàn zài nǎr?

3.	Měixīn fàndiàn	美新饭店	美新飯店
----	----------------	------	------

▶ That's a falling/rising tone, a high level tone and two falling tones.

Say the restaurant's name again. Měixīn fàndiàn.

(qǐngwèn) *Where is Maxine's restaurant?* Měixīn fàndiàn zài nǎr?

(shì shì shuō)  
*Take King's Road or literally, go King's Road.* Zǒu Yīngwáng Dào.

12:00

You want to say *take the road to the right. To the right.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

4.	yòubian	右边	右邊
----	---------	----	----

▶ The tones are high falling and high level.<sup>1</sup>

(zài shuō yíci) yòubian

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *The road to the right.* Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

5.	tiáo	条	條
----	------	---	---

(shì shì shuō) *The road* Nà tiáo lù.

▶ Using falling/rising and falling tones. 条(tiáo) is a measure word used with road.

(shì shì shuō) *The road to the right.*  
Literally, *To the right, the road.* Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *King's Road.* Yīngwáng Dào.

<sup>1</sup> In 右边 (*right/yòubian*), the second syllable has a neutral tone.

Both 道(dào) and 路(lù) mean *road*.

Say together *King's Road, the road to the right.* Yīngwáng Dào, Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

Do you remember how to ask *Which flight?* Nǎ gè bānjī?

(shì shì wèn) *Which road?* Remember to use the measure word for road. Nǎ tiáo lù?

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *The road to the right.* Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

◀ In that, the 那(nà) was pronounced with a falling tone.

15:00

Remember that in Mandarin, a change in tone can change the meaning of a word.

Say together *Which road?*  
*The road to the right.*

Nǎ tiáo lù?  
Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

Zǒu Yīngwáng Dào.

(qǐng shuō) *It's not straight ahead.*

Bú shì yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

*You should take the road to the right.*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

6. yīnggāi

应该

應該

(qǐng shuō)

yīnggāi

◀ *Should* using two high level tones.

*You should take the road to the right.*

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

Now try to ask *I should take which road?*

Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu nǎ tiáo lù?

*The road to the right.*

Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

(qǐng wèn) *Or go straight ahead?*

Háishì yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu?

18:00

*Which is King's Road?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǎ tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào?

You use the measure word to imply *which road*.  
(zài wèn yíci) *Which is King's Road?*

Nǎ tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào?

*Go straight ahead.*

yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

*Wait one moment.*

Děng yìhuǐr.

*You should take the road to the left.*  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù.

7. zuǒbian

左边

左邊

◀ *To the left* (zuǒbian) is pronounced with falling/rising and high level tones.<sup>2</sup>  
(zài shuō yíci) zuǒbian

(qǐng shuō) *To the right.* yòubian

(zài wèn yíci) *I should take which road?* Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu nǎ tiáo lù?

(shì shì wèn) *The road to the left?* Zuǒbian nà tiáo lù ma?  
Shì bú shì zuǒbian nà tiáo lù?

(qǐng huí dá) *No. You should go straight ahead.* Bú shì. Nǐ yīnggāi yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

(qǐng shuō) *It's not the road to the left.* Bú shì zǒubian nà tiáo lù.

21:00

(qǐng shuō) *Take the road to the right.* Zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

*Take the road to the left.* Zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù.

*Then go straight ahead.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Ránhòu yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

8.	ránhòu	然后	然後
----	--------	----	----

(qǐng shuō) ránhòu

◀ *Then* the tones are rising and falling.

(shì shì wèn) *What about then?* Ránhòu ne?

(zài shuō yíci) *Then take the road to the right.* Ránhòu zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

*That is King's road.* (qǐng tīng) Nà tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào.

What word means both *the* and *that*? nà

(qǐng shuō) *That is King's Road.* Nà tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào.  
Remember the measure word

(zài wèn yíci) *Which is King's Road?* Nǎ tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào?

*It isn't very far.* (zěnmē shuō?) Bú shì hěn yuǎn.

*You should take that road.* Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu nà tiáo lù.

24:00

*Take the road to the right.* Zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

*Then take the road to the left.* Ránhòu zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù.

*Wait one moment.* (zěnmē shuō?) Děng yìhuǐr.

<sup>2</sup> As in 右边 (*right/yòubian*), the second syllable in 左边 (*left/zuǒbian*) has a neutral tone.

*I don't understand.*

Wǒ bù míngbai.

The woman say *You speak Mandarin very well.* Nǐ guóyǔ shuō de hěn hǎo.  
(qǐng tīng)

*Mandarin (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)*

9.	guóyǔ	国语	國語
----	-------	----	----

◀ The tones are rising and falling/rising.

(qǐng shuō) *Mandarin*

guóyǔ

What other name do you know for the *Mandarin Language*? 普通话(pǔtōnghuà) or *Common Language* is used on the Mainland, while 国语(guóyǔ) is more frequently used in Hong Kong.<sup>3</sup>

Using 国语 (guóyǔ), tell me that I speak Mandarin very well.

Nǐ guóyǔ shuō de hěn hǎo.

(qǐng shuō) *I can speak a little Mandarin.*

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr guóyǔ.

Try to say *You speak too quickly.*

Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.

(qǐng zài shuō yíci) Please say it again.  
(qǐng zài shuō yíci)

Nǐ shuō de tài kuài le.

27:00

(shì shì shuō) Please say it again.

(qǐng zài shuō yíci)

(zài shuō yíci) *Which is King's Road?*

Nǎ tiáo shì Yīngwáng Dào?

*Take the road to the right.*

Zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

*Then go straight ahead.*

Ránhòu yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

*The restaurant isn't very far.*

Fàndiàn bú shì hěn yuǎn.

(qǐng shuō) *You should take this road.*

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu zhè tiáo lù.

(qǐng shuō) *I don't speak Mandarin very well.*

Wǒ guóyǔ shuō de bú hǎo.

(shì shì wèn)

*Should I take the road to the left?*

Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù ma?

(shì shì wèn) *Or the road to the right?*

Háishì yòubian nà tiáo lù ma?

(qǐng shuō) *I really don't know.*

Wǒ zhēn de bú zhīdao.

This is the end of unit 24.

30:00

<sup>3</sup> Also used in Taiwan.

## Unit 25

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	why?	wèi shénme	为什么	爲什麼
2.	because	yīnwèi	因为	因爲
3.	store	shāngdiàn	商店	商店
4.	closed	guān	关	關
5.	door	mén	门	門
6.	late	wǎn	晚	晚
7.	open	kāi	开	開

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 25 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn guóyǔ duìhuà.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Qǐngwèn, zhè tiáo lù qù Měixīn fàndiàn ma?	男人: 请问, 这条路去美新饭店吗?
<b>Man:</b> May I ask, does this road go to Maxine's Restaurant?	男人: 請問, 這條路去美新飯店嗎?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú shì.	女人: 不是。
<b>Woman:</b> No.	女人: 不是。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nàme, nǎ tiáo lù qù Měixīn fàndiàn?	男人: 那么, 哪条路去美新饭店?
<b>Man:</b> In that case which road goes to Maxine's Restaurant?	男人: 那麼, 哪條路去美新飯店?
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu nà tiáo lù. Bú shì hěn yuǎn.	女人: 你应该走那条路。不是很远。
<b>Woman:</b> You should take that road. It's not very far.	女人: 你應該走那條路。不是很遠。

(qǐngwèn) *Is Maxine's Restaurant very far?*

Měixīn fàndiàn hěn yuǎn ma?  
Měixīn fàndiàn shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?

(qǐng shuō) *You should take this road.*

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu zhè tiáo lù.

(Guóyǔ) *In Mandarin.*

(Guóyǔ) *Which road? Zěnme wèn?*

Nǎ tiáo lù?

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *The road to the right.*

Yòubian nà tiáo lù.

Ask if you should take the road to the right.

Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù ma?

(Guóyǔ) *Wait a moment. Zěnme shuō?*

Děng yìhuǐr.



Ask if you should take the road to the left.

*No. The road is over there.*

(shì shì shuō) *You should take that road.*

(zài wèn yíci) *Which road?*

*Which road? That road.*

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *Take King's Road.*

*Then.*

*Then go straight ahead.*

Ask if it's very far.

Ask if it's very expensive.

(Guóyǔ Hong Kong Dollars. Zěnmē shuō?)

*70 Hong Kong Dollars.*

(shì shì shuō) *80 Hong Kong Dollars.*

(qǐng shuō) *You should take this road.*

(shì shì shuō)

*Maxine's restaurant is not very far.*

And now ask how much money I have.

(qǐng shuō) *I have 80 Hong Kong Dollars.*

(Guóyǔ I can. Zěnmē shuō?)

(qǐng wèn) *Can I buy something?*

*Can I buy something here?*

Remember the word order.

(qǐng shuō) *You can't.*

(shì shì shuō) *You can't buy anything.*

Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù ma?

03:00

Bú shì. Nà tiáo lù zài nàr.

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu nà tiáo lù.

Nǎ tiáo lù?

Nǎ tiáo lù? Nà tiáo lù.

Zǒu Yīngwáng Dào.

Ránhòu.

Ránhòu yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

Hěn yuǎn ma?

Shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?

Hěn guì ma?

Shì bú shì hěn guì?

Gǎngbì.

qī shí kuài gǎngbì

bā shí kuài gǎngbì

06:00

Nǐ yīnggāi zǒu zhè tiáo lù.

Měixīn fàndiàn bú shì hěn yuǎn.

Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo qián?

Wǒ yǒu bā shí kuài gǎngbì.

Wǒ kěyǐ.

Wǒ kěyǐ mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

Wǒ kě bù kěyǐ mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī?

Wǒ kěyǐ zài zhèr mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?

Wǒ kě bù kěyǐ zài zhèr mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī?

Nǐ bù kěyǐ.

Nǐ bù kěyǐ mǎi dōngxī.

*Why?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Wèi shénme? \_\_\_\_\_

09:00

1.	wèi shénme	为什么	爲什麼
----	------------	-----	-----

◀ That's pronounced with a falling tone followed by rising and falling tones.<sup>1</sup>

*Why?*

Wèi shénme?

*Because.*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

2.	yīnwèi	因为	因爲
----	--------	----	----

◀ The tones are high level and falling.

(qǐng shuō) *Because.*

Yīnwèi

(qǐng wèn) *Why?*

Wèi shénme?

(qǐng shuō) *Why? Because.*

Pay attention to the tones.

Wèi shénme? Yīnwèi.

(qǐng shuō) *I have 80 Hong Kong Dollars.*

Wǒ yǒu bā shí kuài gǎngbì.

(zài shuō yíci) *Because.*

Yīnwèi.

*The stores are closed.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Shàngdiàn guān mén le.

3.	shāngdiàn	商店	商店
----	-----------	----	----

◀ The tones are high level and falling.

(qǐng shuō) *Stores.*

Shāngdiàn.

*The stores are closed.* (qǐng tīng)

Shāngdiàn quān mén le.

You're saying something like the stores doors have been closed.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *closed*

4.	guān	关	關
----	------	---	---

◀ This is pronounced with a high level tone.

12:00

(qǐng shuō) *closed*

guān

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *doors*

5.	mén	门	門
----	-----	---	---

◀ Notice the rising tone.

*doors*

mén

*The doors have been closed.*

Guān mén le.

The 了 (le) ending with the falling tone is what means *have been*.*The doors have been closed.*

Guān mén le.

<sup>1</sup> The third syllable of 为什么 (*why/wèi shénme*) is pronounced with a neutral tone.

(shì shì shuō) *The stores have closed.* Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

And do you remember how to say *Enough* or *That's enough.* Gòu le.

With the 了 (*le*) ending you're literally saying *has been enough.*

(zài shuō yíci) *The store are closed.* Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

(qǐngwèn) *Why?* Wèi shénme?

*The store are closed.* Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

*Because it's too late.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.

6.	wǎn	晚	晚
----	-----	---	---

(guóyǔ) *late* (zěnmē shuō?) wǎn

◆ *Late* is pronounced with a falling/rising tone.

Tell me that *It's too late.* Tài wǎn le.

80 bā shí

Say that *The stores are closed.* Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

(xiànzài qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *open* 15:00

7.	kāi	开	開
----	-----	---	---

◆ This word is pronounced with a high level tone.

(qǐng shuō) *open* kāi

(shì shì shuō) *open doors* kāi mén

Try to ask *Are the stores open?* Shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma?  
Remember to ask *Have been open?*

You can ask this in a different way. Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

This is the positive/negative structure used for this question.

(zài wèn yíci) *Are the stores open?* Shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma?  
Used both forms. Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?

Try to answer *no* Méiyǒu. Shāngdiàn méiyǒu kāi mén.

*The stores have been closed.* (zěnmē shuō?) Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

18:00

Ask again if the stores are open now. Xiànzài shāngdiàn kāi mén le?  
Xiànzài shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?

(zài shuō yíci)	再说一次。
Say again.	再说一次。
(zài shuō yíci) <i>The stores are closed.</i>	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.
<i>Because it's too late.</i>	Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Wait one moment.</i>	Děng yìhuǐr. Shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
<i>I don't understand what you are saying.</i>	Wǒ bú míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.
(shì shì shuō) Please say it again.	(qǐng zài shuō yíci)
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>The stores are open.</i>	Shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
And now tell me that <i>The stores are closed.</i>	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.
◀ The tones are the same.	
Tell me <i>Now the stores are closed.</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn guān mén le.
Say <i>It's too late.</i>	Tài wǎn le.
(xiànzài qǐngwèn) <i>What time is it?</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
(huí dá) <i>Now it's 8 o'clock.</i>	Xiànzài bā diǎn zhōng.
	21:00
(qǐngwèn) <i>Now are the stores open?</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma? Xiànzài shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?
(qǐng shuō) <i>The stores are open.</i>	Shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
How would you tell me that <i>Now the stores are closed.</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn guān mén le.
(qǐngwèn) <i>Now are the stores open?</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma? Xiànzài shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?
(qǐng shuō) <i>Now the stores are open</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
How do you think you'll tell him <i>No, the stores are not open.</i>	Shāngdiàn méiyǒu kāi mén.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Now the stores are closed.</i>	Xiànzài shāngdiàn guān mén le.
(shì shì wèn) <i>Why?</i>	Wèi shénme?
<i>Because it's too late.</i>	Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.
<i>Now it's 9 o'clock.</i>	Xiànzài jiǔ diǎn zhōng.

*The stores are closed.*

Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

24:00

Ask if it's very far.

Hěn yuǎn ma?  
Shì bú shì hěn yuǎn?

(qǐng shuō) *Go straight ahead.*

Yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.

Now ask if it's very expensive.

Hěn guì ma?  
Shì bú shì hěn guì?

(qǐng shuō) *80 Hong Kong Dollars*

bā shí kuài gǎngbì

72

qī shí èr

(qǐng shuō) *64 Hong Kong Dollars*

liù shí sì kuài gǎngbì

(qǐng shuō) *You can't buy anything.*

Nǐ bú kěyǐ mǎi dōngxi.

(qǐng shuō) *Because the stores are closed.*

Yīnwèi shāngdiàn guān mén le.

(xiànzài shì shì shuō) *Tomorrow the stores are open.*

You don't need 了 (le) with tomorrow.

Míngtiān shāngdiàn kāi mén.

(zài shuō yíci) *Tomorrow the stores are open.*

Míngtiān shāngdiàn kāi mén.

Now listen to this conversation. (xiànzài qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ kěyǐ zài Xiānggǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?	男人：我可以在香港买一点儿东西吗？
<b>Man:</b> Can I buy something in Hong Kong?	男人：我可以在香港買一點兒東西嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bú kěyǐ.	女人：不可以。
<b>Woman:</b> You can't.	女人：不可以。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wèi shénme?	男人：为什么？
<b>Man:</b> Why?	男人：為什麼？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yīnwèi shāngdiàn guān mén le.	女人：因为商店关门了。
<b>Woman:</b> Because the stores are closed.	女人：因為商店關門了。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wèi shénme?	男人：为什么？
<b>Man:</b> Why?	男人：為什麼？
27:00	
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yīnwèi xiànzài tài wǎn le.	女人：因为现在太晚了。
<b>Woman:</b> Because now it's too late.	女人：因為現在太晚了。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Bú shì hěn wǎn.	男人：不是很晚。
<b>Man:</b> It's not very late.	男人：不是很晚。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Tài wǎn le. Jīntiān bú kěyǐ mǎi dōngxi.	女人：太晚了。今天不可以买东西。

<b>Woman:</b> It's too late. Today you can't buy anything.	女人：太晚了。今天不可以買東西。
<i>What time is it? (zěnmě wèn?)</i>	Xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng?
(huí dá) <i>It's 10 o'clock.</i>	Xiànzài shí diǎn zhōng.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>The stores are closed.</i>	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.
<i>Why?</i>	Wèi shénme?
(huí dá) <i>Because it's too late.</i>	Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.
Ask him what he would like to do?	Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
<i>I would like to buy something.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
<i>Tomorrow, the stores are open.</i>	Míngtiān, shāngdiàn kāi mén.
(shì shì shuō) <i>But now the stores are closed.</i>	Kěshì xiànzài shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
<i>I would like to buy something.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
(shì shì shuō) <i>For my wife.</i>	Gěi wǒ de tàitai.
Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxi gěi wǒ de tàitai.	我想買一點兒東西給我的太太。
I would like to buy something for my wife.	我想買一點兒東西給我的太太。

This is the end of unit 25.

30:00

## Unit 26

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	friend	péngyǒu	朋友	朋友
2.	see, to	kàn	看	看
3.	work	gōngzuò	工作	工作
4.	stay, to	dāi	待	待
5.	How many days?	Jǐ tiān?	几天	幾天
6.	perhaps	kěnéng	可能	可能
7.	think, to	xiǎng	想	想

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 26 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà.) (qǐng tīng)

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ jīntiān yào qù Běijīng ma?	男人：你好。你今天要去北京嗎？
<b>Man:</b> Hello. Are you going to Beijing today?	男人：你好。你今天要去北京嗎？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Yào. Wǒ jīntiān yào qù Běijīng.	女人：要。我今天要去北京。
<b>Woman:</b> Yes. Today I'm going to Beijing.	女人：要。我今天要去北京。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ qù nàr zuò shénme?	男人：你去那兒做什麼？
<b>Man:</b> What are you going to do there?	男人：你去那兒做什麼？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.	女人：我要看幾個朋友。
<b>Woman:</b> I'm going to see some friends.	女人：我要看幾個朋友。

In this conversation you heard:

Wǒ yào kàn kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

Or *I'm going to see some friends.*

1.	péngyǒu	朋友	朋友
----	---------	----	----

(zài tīng yíci) (the conversation above is repeated)

(xiànzài qǐng huí dá zhè gè wèntí) Now please answer these questions

**Nǚrén:** Nǐ de tàitai hǎo ma?

Tell her that your wife is very well.

Wǒ de tàitai hěn hǎo.

(qǐngwèn) *What about you?*

Nǐ ne?

*Not very well.*

Bú shì hěn hǎo.

(qǐngwèn) *Why?*

Wèi shénme?

<i>Because I'd like to buy something.</i>	Yīnwèi wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxì.
<i>But I can't buy anything.</i>	Kěshì wǒ bú kěyǐ mǎi dōngxì.
<i>Because the stores are closed.</i>	Yīnwèi shāngdiàn guān mén le.
(guóyǔ) <i>It's too late.</i>	Tài wǎn le.
With the ending, you're saying something like <i>It has gotten to be too late.</i> Now ask if the store is open.	Shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma? Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?
Do you remember how to answer <i>No</i> ?	Méiyǒu kāi mén.
	03:00
<i>The stores are closed.</i>	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Now it's too late.</i>	Xiànzài tài wǎn le.
Tell her that <i>It's not too late.</i>	Bú shì hěn wǎn.
<i>The store is open. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Shāngdiàn kāi mén le.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Tomorrow.</i>	Míngtiān.
<i>Tomorrow the stores are open.</i>	Míngtiān shāngdiàn kāi mén.
Tell me that the stores are closed.	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.
(zài shuō yíci) <i>Tomorrow the stores are open.</i>	Míngtiān shāngdiàn kāi mén.
<i>Tomorrow I can't buy anything.</i> (zěnmē shuō?)	Míngtiān wǒ bù kěyǐ mǎi shénme dōngxì.
<i>Why?</i>	Wèi shénme?
(qǐng shuō) <i>Because I'm going to go to Beijing.</i>	Yīnwèi wǒ yào qù Běijīng
Do you remember how to say <i>I'm going to take a plane to go?</i>	Wǒ yào zuò fēijī qù.
	06:00
(shì shì shuō) <i>Tomorrow I'm going to take a plane to Beijing.</i>	Míngtiān wǒ yào zuò fēijī qù Běijīng.
(Guóyǔ <i>airport zěnmē shuō?</i> )	fēijī chǎng
(qǐng shuō) <i>I'd like to go to the airport.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng qù fēijī chǎng.
Ask how many Hong Kong dollars she has.	Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo gǎngbì?
(qǐng shuō) <i>I have enough.</i>	Wǒ gòu le.



Ask where the airport is.	Fēijī chǎng zài nǎr?
Do you remember how to say <i>Take King's Road?</i>	Zǒu Yīngwáng Dào.
(Guóyǔ <i>should</i> zěnmē shuō?)	yīnggāi
(shì shì wèn) <i>I should take which road?</i>	Wǒ yīnggāi zǒu nǎ tiáo lù?
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Take the road to the right.</i>	Zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.

Ránhòu yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.	然後一直往前走。
<i>Then go straight ahead.</i>	然後一直往前走。

09:00

Ask him to say it again.	Zài shuō yíci.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Take the road to the left.</i>	Zǒu zuǒbian nà tiáo lù.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Take the road to the right.</i>	Zǒu yòubian nà tiáo lù.
<i>Then go straight ahead.</i>	Ránhòu yī zhí wǎng qián zǒu.
Thank him.	Xièxie nǐ.
He replies <i>Don't mention it.</i>	Búkèqi.
(shì shì shuō) <i>Are you going to go to Beijing?</i>	Nǐ yào qù Běijīng ma? Nǐ yào bú yào qù Běijīng?
<i>Really?</i>	Zhēn de?
(shì shì wèn) <i>What are you going to do there?</i>	Nǐ yào zài nàr zuò shénme?
<i>I'm going to see some friends. Here's the Mandarin word that means friend or friends.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	péngyǒu

◀ The tones are rising and falling/rising.  
(zài shuō yíci)

péngyǒu

12:00

Do you remember how to say <i>Some children?</i>	Jǐ gè xiǎoháir.
(shì shì shuō) <i>Some friends.</i>	Jǐ gè péngyǒu.
<i>I'm going to see some friends.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

What's the Mandarin word *to see?*

2.	kàn	看	看
----	-----	---	---

◀ it's a falling tone.

(qǐng shuō) *I'm going to see.*

Wǒ yào kàn.

*I'm going to see some friends.*

Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

Try to ask *Are they in Hong Kong?*

Tāmen zài Xiānggǎng ma?  
Tāmen shì bú shì zài Xiānggǎng?

*No. They are not in Hong Kong.*

Bú shì. Tāmen bú shì zài Xiānggǎng.

(qǐng shuō) *They live in Beijing.*

Tāmen zhù zài Běijīng.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*I have some friends in Beijing.*

Wǒ yǒu jǐ gè péngyǒu zài Běijīng.

*I'm going to go there to work.*

Wǒ yào zài nàr gōngzuò.

3.	gōngzuò	工作	工作
----	---------	----	----

15:00

(qǐng shuō)

◀ *Work*, using high level and falling tones.

Gōngzuò

(qǐng shuō) *I'm going to go there to work.*

Wǒ yào zài nàr gōngzuò.

*Not very much.*

Bú shì hěn duō.

*I'm going to see some friends.*

Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

(shì shì shuō) *Then I'm going to work.*

Ránhòu wǒ yào gōngzuò.

Do you remember how to say *today*?

jīntiān

and how do you say *tomorrow* or *tomorrow's day*?

míngtiān

(shì shì shuō) *two days*. You don't need a measure word with *days*.

liǎng tiān

(qǐng shuō) *three days*

sān tiān

*I'm going to stay there three days.*

Wǒ yào zài nàr dāi sān tiān.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

4.	dāi	待	待
----	-----	---	---

(shì shì shuō)

◀ *Stay* using a high level tone.

dāi

(qǐng shuō)

*I'm going to stay there three days.*

Wǒ yào zài nàr dāi sān tiān.

Do you remember how to say  
*I'm going to go there to work?*

Wǒ yào qù nàr gōng zuò.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)  
*I'm going to stay there two days.*

Wǒ yào zài nàr dāi liǎng tiān.

*I'm going to see some friends.*

Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

*You are going to stay.*

Nǐ yào dāi.

*How many days?* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	jǐ tiān?	几天	幾天
----	----------	----	----

◀ The tones are falling/rising and high level.

(qǐngwèn) *How many days?*  
This can also mean *a few days.*

Jǐ tiān.

*I'm going to stay a few days.*

Wǒ yào dāi jǐ tiān.

*Maybe three days.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

maybe

6.	kěnéng	可能	可能
----	--------	----	----

◀ The tones are falling/rising and rising.

(qǐng shuō) *Maybe three days.*

Kěnéng sān tiān.

*Maybe I'm going to see some friends.* Be careful of the word order. You literally say  
*I maybe going to see some friends.* Try it.

Wǒ kěnéng yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

*I'm going to stay a few days.*

Wǒ yào dāi jǐ tiān.

(qǐngwèn) *Are you going to go there to work?*

Nǐ yào qù nàr gōngzuò ma?  
Nǐ yào bú yào qù nàr gōngzuò?

Try to answer *Maybe yes.*

Kěnéng yào.

*I think I'm going to work.* (qǐng tīng)

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào gōngzuò.

Here's how to say *I think.*

Wǒ xiǎng.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

7.	xiǎng	想	想
----	-------	---	---

◀ The word *think* has a falling/rising tone

(zài shuō yíci) *I think.*

Wǒ xiǎng.

What other word sounds exactly like this one? *Would like* has exactly the same pronunciation, although they sound the same, you'll learn to tell the difference through context.

(qǐng shuō) *I think I'm going to work.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào gōngzuò.

(xiànzài shì shì shuō)

*I think I'm not going to work.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ bú yào gōngzuò.

Try to ask her if she is going to see Peter.

Nǐ yào kàn Peter ma?

Nǐ yào bú yào kàn Peter ma?

(qǐng shuō) *Maybe.*

Kěnéng.

24:00

(qǐng shuō) *Maybe I'm going to see him.*

*Literally, I maybe am going to see him.*

Wǒ kěnéng yào kàn tā.

(shì shì wèn) *Are you going to see him?*

Nǐ yào kàn tā ma?

Nǐ yào bú yào kàn tā?

*Maybe I am going to.*

Wǒ kěnéng yào.

(shì shì shuō) *I think I'm going to see him.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào kàn tā.

And now say *I would like to see him.*

Wǒ xiǎng kàn tā.

*Then I'm going to work. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Ránhòu wǒ yào gōngzuò.

*I am going to go to Beijing.*

Wǒ yào qù Běijīng.

*To stay two days.*

Dāi liǎng tiān.

*Maybe three days.*

Kěnéng sān tiān.

(qǐng shuō) *I think.*

Wǒ xiǎng.

*I think I'm going to stay.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào dāi.

*A few days.*

Jǐ tiān.

27:00

Ask her how many Hong Kong dollars she has.

Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo gǎngbì?

(guóyǔ *give zěnmē shuō?*)

gěi

Try to say *Please give me a few Renminbi.* Use 块(kuài).

Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ jǐ kuài Rénmínbì.

Ask her if she would like to buy anything.

Nǚ: Nǐ xiǎng mǎi dōngxī ma?

Nǚ: Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng mǎi dōngxī?

**Nǚrén:** Xiànzài bù xiǎng.

女人: 现在不想。

**Woman:** Not right now.

女人: 现在不想。

(qǐng shuō) *I'm going to go to Beijing.*

Wǒ yào qù Běijīng.

(shì shì shuō)

*I'm going to stay in Beijing a few days.*

Wǒ yào zài Běijīng dāi jǐ tiān.

(qǐngwèn) *What are you going to do there?*

Nǐ yào zài nàr zuò shénme?

(shì shì shuō) *I think I'm going to work there.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào zài nàr gōngzuò.

(qǐng shuō) *Goodbye.*

Zàijiàn.

**Nǚrén:** Zàijiàn.

This is the end of unit 26.

---

30:00

## Unit 27

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	go/leave	zǒu	走	走
2.	only	jiù	就	就
3.	alone	yí gè rén	一个人	一個人

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 27 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn pǔtōnghuà duìhuà.)

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	女人：你好。
<b>Woman:</b> Hello.	女人：你好。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	男人：你好。
<b>Man:</b> Hello.	男人：你好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ shénme shíhou yào qù Běijīng?.	女人：你什么时候要去北京？
<b>Woman:</b> When are you going to Beijing?	女人：你什麼時候要去北京？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Míngtiān wǎnshàng.	男人：明天晚上。
<b>Man:</b> Tomorrow evening.	男人：明天晚上。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Jīntiān ne? Nǐ jīntiān yào zuò shénme?	女人：今天呢？你今天要做什么？
<b>Woman:</b> How about today? What are you going to do today?	女人：今天呢？你今天要做什麼？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ jīntiān yào gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?	男人：我今天要工作。你呢？
<b>Man:</b> I'm going to work today. How about you?	男人：我今天要工作。你呢？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ a. Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.	女人：我啊。我要看几个朋友。
<b>Woman:</b> As for me, I am going to see some friends.	女人：我啊。我要看幾個朋友。

(Pǔtōnghuà *hello* zěnmě shuō?)

Nǐ hǎo.

Ask if the stores are open.

Shāngdiàn kāi mén le ma?

Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén le ma?

*Yes, the doors have been opened.*

Kāi mén le.

And how would you answer *No*.

Méiyǒu kāi mén.

Now say that the stores are closed.

Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

Ask *Why*?

Wèi shénme?

(huí dá) <i>Because now it's too late.</i>	Yīnwèi xiànzài tài wǎn le.
Tell her <i>It's not very late.</i>	Bú shì hěn wǎn.
Ask me if I'm going to work in Beijing.	Nǐ yào zài Běijīng gōngzuò ma? Nǐ yào bú yào zài Běijīng gōngzuò ma?
(huí dá) <i>Maybe I'm going to work.</i>	Wǒ kěnéng yào gōngzuò.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>I think I'm going to work.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào gōngzuò.
Say that you're going to go to Beijing.	Wǒ yào qù Běijīng.
How does she ask <i>What you're going to go there to do?</i>	Nǐ yào qù nàr zuò shénme?
Say that you're going to see some friends.	Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.
Ask how many days I'm going to stay in Beijing. Be careful of the word order.	Nǐ yào zài Běijīng dāi jǐ tiān?
<i>A few days. (zěnmě shuō?)</i>	Jǐ tiān.
(qǐng shuō) <i>I think I'm going to stay a few days.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào dāi jǐ tiān.
And how do you say <i>A few friends?</i>	Jǐ gè péngyǒu.
Tell me that you're going to see some friends.	Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.
(qǐng shuō) <i>Maybe I'm going to see a few friends.</i>	Wǒ kěnéng yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.
(pǔtōnghuà 80 zěnmě shuō?)	bā shí
85	bā shí wǔ
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) 90	jiǔ shí
◀ The tones are falling/rising and rising.	
(shì shì shuō)	jiǔ shí
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) 95	jiǔ shí wǔ
92	jiǔ shí èr
99	jiǔ shí jiǔ

03:00

06:00

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 89	bā shí jiǔ	
Ask if the stores are open.	Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?	
(huí dá) No.	Méiyǒu kāi mén.	
<i>The stores are closed. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Shāngdiàn guān mén le.	
<i>Why?</i>	Wèi shénme?	
<i>Because it's too late.</i>	Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.	
Tell her it's not very late.	Bú shì hěn wǎn.	09:00
<i>Are you going to buy something?</i> (zěnmē wèn?)	Nǐ yào mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	
<i>Answer No. I'm going to work.</i>	Bú yào. Wǒ yào gōngzuò.	
<i>Say that I'm going to see some friends.</i>	Wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.	
<i>I would like to see some friends.</i> (zěnmē shuō?)	Wǒ xiǎng kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.	
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>I think I'm going to see some friends.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.	
Ask the woman again if she is going to buy something.	Nǐ yào mǎi yìdiǎnr dōngxī ma?	
Ask how much money it is.	Duōshǎo qián?	
(huí dá) 90 Renminbi	Jiǔ shí kuài Renminbi.	
(qǐng shuō) hundred	bǎi	
(shì shì shuō) 100 American Dollars	yì bǎi kuài měijīn	
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>Here you are. 100 Renminbi.</i>	Nò. Yì bǎi kuài Rénmínbì.	12:00
(qǐng shuō) 150 American Dollars	yì bǎi wǔ shí kuài měijīn	
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 180	yì bǎi bā shí	
<i>It's too much.</i>	Tài duō le.	
(qǐng shuō) 170	yì bǎi qī shí	
165	yì bǎi liù shí wǔ	



147

Ask how much you owe.

(qǐng shuō) 100 Renminbi

(qǐng shuō) 90 Renminbi

Why?

Because.

Ask me what I want.

I would not like to drink anything.  
(zěnmē shuō?)

Say Now I'm going to work.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) Give me a few Renminbi.

I would like to leave. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

1.	zǒu	走	走
----	-----	---	---

走(zǒu) with the falling/rising tone can mean both *to go* and *to leave*.

(qǐng shuō) To leave.

With the 了(le) ending, it's like saying to have gone.

Say that you would like to leave.

Are the stores open? (zěnmē wèn?)

Do you remember how to answer Yes.

(xiānsheng qǐng shuō)  
Yes. The stores are open.

And now say The stores are closed.

Why?

Because it's too late.

(qǐng shuō) I would like to leave.

(shì shì wèn) Would you like to leave or  
Would you like to have gone?

yì bǎi sì shí qī

Duōshǎo qián?

yì bǎi kuài Renminbi

jiǔ shí kuài Renminbi

Wèi shénme?

Yīnwèi.

Nǐ yào shénme?

Wǒ bù xiǎng hē dōngxī.

Xiànzài wǒ yào gōngzuò.

15:00

Gěi wǒ jǐ kuài Rénmínbì.

Wǒ xiǎng zǒu le.

Zǒu.

Wǒ xiǎng zǒu le.

Shāngdiàn kāi mén le?  
Shāngdiàn yǒu méiyǒu kāi mén?

Kāi mén le.

Kāi mén le. Shāngdiàn kāi mén le.

Shāngdiàn guān mén le.

Wèi shénme?

Yīnwèi tài wǎn le.

Wǒ xiǎng zǒu le.

18:00

Nǐ xiǎng zǒu le ma?  
Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng zǒu?



*Would you like to leave?*

Nǐ xiǎng zǒu le ma?  
Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng zǒu?

24:00

You want to say *But I'm alone*. Just listen.

Kěshì jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

2.	jiù	就	就
----	-----	---	---

Literally, it's *But only I'm one person*. *one person* (qǐng shuō)

3.	yí gè rén	一个人	一個人
----	-----------	-----	-----

◀ The tone in that rises, falls and then rises again in the end.

(zài shuō yí cì)

yí gè rén

*I'm alone* or literally, *Only I'm one person*.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

◀ *Only* is pronounced with a falling tone.  
(qǐng shuō) *only*

jiù  
jiù wǒ yí gè rén

(shì shì shuō) *I'm alone*.

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *together*

yìqǐ

*I'm alone*.

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

(shì shì shuō) *You're alone*.

Jiù nǐ yí gè rén.

Try to ask her if she is alone.

Jiù nǐ yí gè rén ma?  
Shì bú shì Jiù nǐ yí gè rén?

(qǐng shuō)

*No. I and my husband are together*.

Bú shì. Wǒ hé wǒ de xiānsheng yìqǐ.

27:00

*I'm going to leave*. (zěnmē shuō?)

Wǒ yào zǒu le.

(qǐng shuō) *I'm alone*.

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

*We're going to leave together*. (zěnmē shuō?)

Wǒmen yào yìqǐ zǒu.

You want to say *I'm leaving alone*.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén zǒu.

Notice that you don't use 了(le).

(zài shuō yí cì) *I'm leaving alone*.

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén zǒu.

走(zǒu) can mean *leave* and *leaving*.

Tell me that you're leaving alone.

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén zǒu.

(xiànzài qǐngwèn) *Why?*

Wèi shénme?

(qǐng shuō) *Because...*

Yīnwèi...

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *Wait one moment.*

Děng yìhuǐr.

(shì shì wèn) *Are you leaving alone?*

Jiù nǐ yí gè rén zǒu ma?  
Shì bú shì jiù nǐ yí gè rén zǒu?

Answer *Maybe, yes.*

Kěnéng, shì.

(qǐng shuō) *We can leave together.*

Wǒmen kěyǐ yìqǐ zǒu.

This is the end of unit 27.

---

30:00

## Unit 28

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	meaning	yìsi	意思	意思
2.	time, certain period of	jiǔ	久	久
3.	time/the time	shíjiān	时间	時間
4.	too bad/pity	yíhàn	遗憾	遺憾

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 28 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

Qǐng tīng zhè duàn pǔtōnghuà duìhuà.

<b>Nánrén:</b> Chén Xiǎojiè, nǐ hǎo.	男人：陈小姐，你好。
<b>Man:</b> Hello, Miss Chen.	男人：陳小姐，你好。
<b>Chén Xiǎojiè:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	陈小姐：你好。
<b>Miss Chen:</b> Hello.	陳小姐：你好。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ xiànzài yào zuò shénme?	男人：你现在要做什么？
<b>Man:</b> What do you want to do now?	男人：你現在要做什麼？
<b>Chén Xiǎojiè:</b> Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào qù Běijīng. Wǒ de jiārén zài nàr. Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù ma?	陈小姐：我想我要去北京。我的家人在那儿。你想跟我一起去吗？
<b>Miss Chen:</b> I think I want to go to Beijing. My family is there. Would you like to go along with me?	陳小姐：我想我要去北京。我的家人在那兒。你想跟我一起去嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ kě bú kěyǐ jīntiān zǒu?	男人：你可不可以今天走？
<b>Man:</b> Can you leave today?	男人：你可不可以今天走？
<b>Chén Xiǎojiè:</b> Kěyǐ.	陈小姐：可以。
<b>Miss Chen:</b> I can.	陳小姐：可以。
(Pǔtōnghuà <i>together zěnmě shuō?</i> )	yìqǐ
Ask the woman how much money she has.	Nǐ yǒu duōshǎo qián.
<i>I have 100 Renminbi.</i>	Wǒ yǒu yì bǎi kuài Rénmínbì.
180	yì bǎi bā shí
Ask her to give you 90 Renminbi.	Máfan nǐ, gěi wǒ jiǔ shí kuài Rénmínbì.
(qǐng shuō) <i>I'd like to leave.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng zǒu le.
(shì shì wèn) <i>Would you like to leave?</i>	Nǐ xiǎng zǒu le ma? Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng zǒu?

(qǐng shuō) *I'm going to leave.*

Wǒ yào zǒu le.

*I'm alone.*

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

Remember, this literally means *Only I one person.*

03:00

(xiànzài qǐngwèn) *Are you alone?*Jiù nǐ yí gè rén ma?  
Shì bú shì jiù nǐ yīnggāi rén?And how would you ask *Are you leaving alone?*Jiù nǐ yí gè rén zǒu ma?  
Shì bú shì jiù nǐ yí gè rén zǒu?

(Wèn tā nǐ qù nǎr?)

Ask where she is going to go

Nǐ yào qù nǎr?

(shì shì shuō) *I'm going to go to work.*

Wǒ yào qù gōngzuò.

Just as in English, this can refer to the location where the work takes place.

(zài tīng yíci) *I'm going to go to work.*

Wǒ yào qù gōngzuò.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*I'm going to go to Beijing.*

Wǒ yào qù Běijīng.

Say that you have a few friends over there.

Wǒ yǒu jǐ gè péngyǒu zài nàr.

(Pǔtōnghuà to see zěnmē shuō?)

kàn

(qǐng shuō nǐ xiǎng kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu)

Wǒ xiǎng kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.

(qǐng shuō)

*I'm going to stay in Beijing for a few days.*

Wǒ yào zài Běijīng dāi jǐ tiān.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *Are you going to work?*Nǐ yào gōngzuò ma?  
Nǐ yào bú yào gōngzuò?*Maybe yes. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Kěnéng yào.

06:00

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *I think I'm going to work.*

Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yào gōngzuò.

Ask him is he's going to Beijing.

Nǐ yào qù Běijīng ma?  
Nǐ yào bú yào qù Běijīng?(qǐng shuō) *I'm alone.*

Jiù wǒ yí gè rén.

Did you pronounce that as the speaker did?

(zài shuō yíci) *only*

jiù

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 99

jiǔ shí jiǔ

(qǐng shuō) *Please give me 95 Renminbi.* Máfān nǐ, gěi wǒ jiǔ shí wǔ kuài  
Rénmínbì.

92

jiǔ shí èr

(qǐng shuō) *Here you are. 100 Renminbi.* Nò. Yí bǎi kuài Rénmínbì.

*Now you can leave. (zěnmē shuō?)* Xiànzài nǐ kěyǐ zǒu le.

**Nǚrén:** Tài yíhàn le.

09:00

What does that mean? (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) Shénme yìsi?

1.	yìsi	意思	意思
----	------	----	----

Literally, *What meaning?*

(shì shì shuō) *meaning* yìsi

◀ Did you hear the two falling tones?<sup>1</sup>

(zài shuō yìcì) yìsi

(shì shì wèn) *What does it mean?* Shénme yìsi?

(huí dá) *It's Mandarin.* Shì pǔtōnghuà.

*Ask if it is Mandarin.* Shì pǔtōnghuà ma?  
Shì bú shì pǔtōnghuà?

(shì shì shuō) *Yes. I think it is Mandarin.* Shì. Wǒ xiǎng shì pǔtōnghuà.

*What does it mean?* Shénme yìsi?

(qǐngwèn) *Are you American?* Nǐmen shì Měiguó rén ma?  
*Use the plural you.* Nǐmen shì bú shì Měiguó rén?

*Yes. We are American.* Shì. Wǒmen shì Měiguó rén.

(Pǔtōnghuà *meaning zěnmē shuō?*) yìsi

(Qǐng shuō tài yíhàn le.) Tài yíhàn le.

12:00

*Ask what it means.* Shénme yìsi?

(qǐng shuō) *We are here.* Wǒmen zài zhèr.

*How many days? (zěnmē wèn?)* jǐ tiān?

*We have been here for a few days.* Wǒmen zài zhèr jǐ tiān le.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

<sup>1</sup> The second syllable has a neutral tone.

What part of that means *Have been?* It's the 了(le) ending.

(qǐng shuō)

*We have been here for a few days.*

Wǒmen zài zhèr jǐ tiān le.

*We're going to leave. (zěnmě shuō?)*

Wǒmen yào zǒu le.

(zài shuō yíci)

*We have been here for a few days.*

Wǒmen zài zhèr jǐ tiān le.

Here's how to ask *For how long?*

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Duō jiǔ le?

2.	jiǔ	久	久
----	-----	---	---

久(jiǔ) with a falling/rising tone means *a certain period of time* or in this case *long*.

Say this word again. jiǔ

Duō jiǔ le?

With the 了(le) ending, it's like asking *It has been how long?*

(qǐngwèn) *For how long?*

Duō jiǔ le?

15:00

(qǐng shuō) *For a few days.*

Jǐ tiān le.

(shì shì shuō) *For 9 days.*

Jiǔ tiān le.

(zài wèn yíci) *For how long?*

Duō jiǔ le?

The word meaning *a certain period of time* sounds just like the *number nine*. With practice, you'll learn to tell the difference from the context in which these are both used.

(xiànzài zài shuō yíci) *For a few days.*

Jǐ tiān le.

And how would you say

*I would like to stay a few days?*

Wǒ xiǎng dāi jǐ tiān.

*For how long or It has been how long?*

Duō jiǔ le?

(shì shì wèn) *You're going to stay how long?*

Nǐmen yào dāi duō jiǔ?

(zài wèn yíci) *Stay how long?*

Dāi duō jiǔ?

Say together *For how long and*

*To stay how long?*

Duō jiǔ le?

Dāi duō jiǔ?

(qǐngwèn) *You are here. Use the plural you.*

Nǐmen zài zhèr.

*For how long?*

Duō jiǔ le?

*You have been here for how long?*

Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jiǔ le?

18:00

(zài wèn yíci) *You're going to stay how long?*

Nǐmen yào dāi duō jiǔ?



<i>A few days.</i>	Jǐ tiān.
<i>What are you going to do?</i>	Nǐmen yào zuò shénme?
(Pǔtōnghuà <i>to see zěnmē shuō?</i> )	kàn
(qǐng shuō) <i>Maybe I'm going to see.</i>	Kěnéng wǒ yào kàn.
<i>A few friends.</i>	Jǐ gè péngyǒu.
Now tell me that you would like to see a few friends.	Wǒ xiǎng kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) <i>I don't think I'm going to see them.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng wǒ bú yào kàn tāmen.
Tell me that you would like to see a few friends.	Wǒ xiǎng kàn jǐ gè péngyǒu.
<i>But I can't see them.</i>	Kěshì wǒ bù kěyǐ kàn tāmen.
<i>Why?</i>	Wèi shénme?
<i>Because...</i>	Yīnwèi... Wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
Ask what it means	Shénme yìsi?
(shì shì shuō) <i>It means or literally, The meaning is.</i>	Yìsi shì.
(zài shuō yíci) Here's how to say <i>Time</i> . (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	yìsi shì because we don't have the time.
<b>3.</b>	shíjiān      时间      時間
◀ The tones are rising and high level. (qǐng shuō) <i>time or the time</i>	shíjiān
(shì shì shuō) <i>We don't have the time.</i>	Wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
(xiànzài qǐngwèn) <i>What time is it?</i>	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?
(qǐng shuō) <i>You don't have the time.</i> Use the plural.	Nǐmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
And what word means <i>a certain period of time?</i>	jiǔ
<i>You have been here for how long?</i> Use the plural <i>you</i> .	Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jiǔ le?
(qǐng shuō) <i>For 8 days.</i>	Bā tiān le.

21:00

24:00

(shì shì shuō) <i>It isn't very long.</i>	Bú shì hěn jiǔ.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We would like to stay.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng dāi.
<i>We would like to stay here a few days.</i> (zěnmē shuō?)	Wǒmen xiǎng zài zhèr dāi jǐ tiān.
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>We have been here for a few days.</i>	Wǒmen zài zhèr jǐ tiān le.
Tell me that you have been here for three days.	Wǒmen zài zhèr sān tiān le.
<i>We don't have the time.</i>	Wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We can't stay.</i>	Wǒmen bù kěyǐ dāi.
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Tàì yíhàn le. (qǐngwèn shénme yìsi)	Shénme yìsi?
<i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.
(shì shì shuō) <i>A lot of time.</i>	Hěn duō shíjiān.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We would like to stay a few days.</i>	Wǒmen xiǎng dāi jǐ tiān.
<i>But we don't have the time.</i>	Kěshì wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
How does she ask <i>For how long you've been here?</i>	Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jiǔ le?
How would you tell her that you've been here for three days?	Wǒmen zài zhèr sān tiān le.
How does she ask if you're alone.	Jiǔ nǐ yí gè rén ma? Shì bú shì jiǔ nǐ yí gè rén?
Say that you're with your family together.	Wǒ gēn wǒ de jiārén zài yìqǐ.
And now say <i>Tomorrow we're going to leave.</i>	Míngtiān wǒmen yào zǒu le.
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Tàì yíhàn le. Ask what that means.	Shénme yìsi?
<i>The meaning is.</i> Yìsi shì that's really too bad.	Yìsi shì.

27:00

4.	yíhàn	遗憾	遺憾
----	-------	----	----

This is the end of unit 28.

30:00

## Unit 29

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	morning/good morning	zǎo	早	早
2.	week	xīngqī	星期	星期
3.	arrive	dàodá	到达	到達
4.	yesterday	zuótiān	昨天	昨天
5.	like/be pleased with	xǐhuan	喜欢	喜歡

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 29 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà.)

<b>Nǚrén:</b> Chén Xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo.	女人: 陈先生, 你好。
<b>Woman:</b> Hello, Mr. Chen.	女人: 陳先生, 你好。
<b>Chén Xiānsheng:</b> Zǎo.	陈先生: 早。
<b>Mr. Chen:</b> Good Morning.	陳先生: 早。

1.	zǎo	早	早
----	-----	---	---

(shì shì wèn) *What does that mean?*

Shénme yìsi?

*The meaning is good morning.*

Yìsi shì good morning.

How would I tell you that *I don't understand?*

Wǒ bù míngbai.

(wèn) *What don't you understand?*

Nǐ bù míngbai shénme?

*I don't understand what you're saying.*

Wǒ bù míngbai nǐ shuō shénme.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *We are here.*

Wǒmen zài zhèr.

*For three days or It has been three days.*

Sān tiān le.

Tell me that you've been here for three days.

Wǒmen zài zhèr sān tiān le.

Ask me for how long I've been here.

Nǐ zài zhèr duō jiǔ le?

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)

*I've been here for two days.*

Wǒ zài zhèr liǎng tiān le.

*I don't have the time.*

Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>We're going to stay.</i>	Wǒmen yào dāi.			03:00
(wèn) <i>Stay how long?</i>	Dāi duō jiǔ?			
<i>A few days.</i>	Jǐ tiān.			
<i>A few weeks.</i>	Jǐ gè xīngqī.			
<b>2.</b>	xīngqī	星期	星期	
(qǐngwèn) <i>What does that mean?</i>	Shénme yìsi? Yìsi shì a few weeks.			
Here how to say <i>week</i> or <i>weeks</i> . (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) ◀ This is pronounced with two high level tones.	xīngqī			
(qǐng shuō) <i>Say week.</i>	xīngqī			
<i>A few weeks</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Jǐ gè xīngqī.			
You need the measure word to say this. But now say <i>a few days</i> .	Jǐ tiān.			
(zài shuō yíci) <i>A few weeks.</i>	Jǐ gè xīngqī.			
(shì shì shuō) <i>one week</i>	yí gè xīngqī			
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>One week or It has been one week.</i>	Yí gè xīngqī le.			06:00
(qǐngwèn) <i>For how long?</i>	Duō jiǔ le?			
<i>We've been here for one week.</i>	Wǒmen zài zhèr yí gè xīngqī le.			
<i>We're going to stay.</i>	Wǒmen yào dāi.			
Referring to the woman and her husband, ask <i>You're going to stay how long?</i>	Nǐmen yào dāi duō jiǔ?			
<i>A few weeks</i>	Jǐ gè xīngqī.			
Say <i>I'm going to leave</i> . Use 了 (le) with <i>going to</i>	Wǒ yào zǒu le.			
<i>Later.</i> (zěnmē shuō?)	Guò yìhuǐr.			
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) <i>I'm going to leave later.</i>	Guò yìhuǐr wǒ yào zǒu le.			
<i>I'm alone.</i> (zěnmē shuō?)	Jiǔ wǒ yí gè rén.			

(shì shì shuō) *I'm leaving alone.* Jiǔ wǒ yí gè rén zǒu.  
 (shì shì shuō) *I'm going to stay.* Wǒ yào dāi  
*90 days* jiǔ shí tiān  
*Then I'm going to leave.* Ránhòu wǒ yào zǒu le.  
 (qǐngwèn) *You have been here for how long?* Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jiǔ le?  
 Use the plural *you*.  
 For a few weeks. Jǐ gè xīngqī le.

09:00

Supposed you wanted to say *We arrived yesterday.* (qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *arrive.*

3.	dàodá	到达	到達
----	-------	----	----

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) *yesterday*

4.	zuótiān	昨天	昨天
----	---------	----	----

◀ The tones are rising and high level.

(qǐng shuō) *yesterday* zuótiān

(qǐng shuō)

◀ *Arrive* using two falling tones.<sup>1</sup>

dàodá

Now here's how to say *We arrived yesterday.*

Wǒmen shì zuótiān dàodá.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

Literally, *We are yesterday arrived.*

Wǒmen shì zuótiān dàodá.

(qǐng shuō) *We arrived yesterday.*

*What did you buy yesterday?*

Nǐ zuótiān mǎi le shénme?

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

(qǐng shuō) *You did buy* or *you did bought.*

Nǐ mǎi le.

In this case it's the 了 (le) that turns *buy* into *did buy*.

12:00

(shì shì wèn) *What did you buy?*

Nǐ mǎi le shénme?

(qǐng shuō) *I bought something.*

Wǒ mǎi le yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

(shì shì shuō) *I arrived yesterday.*

Wǒ shì zuótiān dàodá.

Now ask her what she bought.

Nǐ mǎi le shénme?

(xiànzài wèn tā mǎi le shénme)

(shì shì shuō) *I bought something to drink.*

Wǒ mǎi le dōngxi hē.

<sup>1</sup> In 到达 (*to arrive/dàodá*) should be pronounced with a falling tone and a rising tone.

(qǐng shuō) <i>I bought some beer.</i>	Wǒ mǎi le yìdiǎnr píjiǔ.
<i>It's not expensive.</i>	Bú guì.
(qǐng shuō) 95	jiǔ shí wǔ
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) 100	yí bǎi
Here's how to ask if she has eaten. (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Nǐ chī le ma?
(qǐngwèn) <i>Did you eat?</i>	Nǐ chī le ma?
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>I would like to eat something.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
<i>Would you like to eat now? (Zěnmé wèn?)</i>	Nǐ xiànzài xiǎng chī ma?
	15:00
(zài wèn yíci) <i>Did you eat?</i>	Nǐ chī le ma?
Try to answer <i>Yes.</i>	Chī le.
(shì shì shuō) <i>I ate yesterday.</i>	Wǒ zuótiān chī le.
And do you remember how to say <i>I arrived yesterday?</i>	Wǒ shì zuótiān dàodá.
Ask me again if I ate.	Nǐ chī le ma?
(qǐng shuō) <i>I would like to eat something now.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
<i>I would like to eat. I ate.</i>	Wǒ xiǎng chī. Wǒ chī le.
(shì shì shuō) <i>You would like to eat something today.</i>	Nǐ xiǎng jīntiān chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
(shì shì wèn) <i>What are you going to eat?</i>	Nǐ yào chī shénme?
(qǐng shuō) <i>I don't know.</i>	Wǒ bù zhīdao.
How does she tell you that she doesn't have the time?	Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.
(qǐng shuō) <i>You ate yesterday.</i>	Nǐ zuótiān chī le.
	18:00
(zài shuō yíci) <i>You would like to eat something today.</i>	Nǐ xiǎng jīntiān chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi.
Ask her what she bought	Nǐ mǎi le shénme?

She answers *I bought something to drink.* Wǒ mǎi le yìdiǎnr dōngxi hē.

Ask her what she is going to drink. Nǐ yào hē shénme?

*I'm going to drink beer.* Wǒ yào hē píjiǔ.

Here's how to say *I like beer.* Wǒ xǐhuan píjiǔ.

(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

5.	xǐhuan	喜欢	喜歡
----	--------	----	----

How do you say *like*? xǐhuan

◀ That's pronounced with a falling/rising tone followed by a high level tone.<sup>2</sup>

(qǐng shuō) *I like beer.* Wǒ xǐhuan píjiǔ.

(qǐng shuō) *You like tea.* Nǐ xǐhuan chá.

(shì shì wèn) *Do you like beer?* Nǐ xǐhuan píjiǔ ma?  
Nǐ xǐhuan bù xǐhuan píjiǔ?

(qǐng shuō) *I like.* Wǒ xǐhuan.

(shì shì shuō) *I like to eat.* Because you're referring to eating in general, you'll say *Eat anything.*  
Try it. Wǒ xǐhuan chī dōngxi.

21:00

Now in the same way, say *I would like to eat.* Wǒ xiǎng chī dōngxi.

(xiànzài qǐngwèn) *Do you like to eat?* Nǐ xǐhuan chī dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ xǐhuan bù xǐhuan chī dōngxi?

*Would you like to have lunch now?* Nǐ xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn ma?  
Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng xiànzài chī wǔfàn?

(shì shì wèn) *Did you eat?* Nǐ chī le ma?

How would she answer *Yes. I ate.* Chī le. Wǒ chī le.

(qǐng shuō) *I ate today.* Wǒ jīntiān chī le.

Try to ask her what she ate yesterday. Nǐ zuótiān chī le shénme?

(zài wèn yíci) *Did you eat?* Nǐ chī le ma?

*Yesterday, I didn't eat anything.* Zuótiān, wǒ méiyǒu chī dōngxi.  
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō)

You use 没有(méiyǒu) to say that you didn't do something in the past.

<sup>2</sup> In 喜欢 (*to like/xǐhuan*), the second syllable is pronounced with a neutral tone.

For example, *Didn't eat.* (qǐng shuō)  
*I didn't eat.*

Wǒ méiyǒu chī.

(shì shì shuō) *I didn't eat anything.*

Wǒ méiyǒu chī dōngxi.

(qǐngwèn) *Did you eat?*

Nǐ chī le ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chī?

This is the positive/negative structure for use in a yes/no question about something that happened in the past.

(shì shì wèn) *Did you eat anything?*

Nǐ chī le dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chī le dōngxi?

Ask her again if she ate anything.

Nǐ chī le dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu chī dōngxi.

(zài shuō yíci) *I didn't eat anything.*

Wǒ méiyǒu chī dōngxi.

*Why?*

Wèi shénme?

(qǐng shuō) *I'm alone.*

Jiǔ wǒ yí gè rén.

*Would you like to eat something with me?*  
(zěnmē wèn?)

Nǐ xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī yìdiǎnr dōngxi?

(shì shì shuō) *We can eat together.*

Wǒmen kěyǐ yìqǐ chī.  
**Nǚrén:** Hǎo.

(qǐng shuō nǐ zuótiān chī le)  
Please say that you ate yesterday.

Wǒ zuótiān chī le.

(qǐngwèn) *Did you buy anything?*

Nǐ mǎi le dōngxi ma?

(shì shì shuō) *I didn't buy anything.*

Wǒ méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi.

(zài wèn yíci) *Did you buy anything?*

Nǐ mǎi le dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi?

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *I bought.*

Wǒ mǎi le.

*I bought something.*

Wǒ mǎi le yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

*Now ask her what she bought.*

Nǐ mǎi le shénme?

And how would you ask her when she arrived?

Nǐ shì shénme shíhou dàodá?

(Pǔtōnghuà *One week zěnmē shuō?*)

Yí gè xīngqī.



(qǐng shuō) *We arrived yesterday.*

Wǒ shì zuótiān dàodá.

*We've been here for a few weeks.*

Wǒmen zài zhèr jǐ gè xīngqī le.

(qǐng shuō) *I like Beijing.*

Wǒ xǐhuan Běijīng.

This is the end of unit 29.

---

30:00

## Unit 30

## I. Vocabulary

	English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
1.	in the morning	zǎoshàng	早上	早上
2.	Tiantan (Temple of Heaven)	Tiāntán	天坛	天壇
3.	Wangfujing	Wángfǔjǐng	王府井	王府井

## II. Transcript

This is Unit 30 of Pimsleur's Mandarin Chinese I.

(qǐng tīng zhè duàn duìhuà)

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jǐu le?	男人：你们在这儿多久了？
<b>Man:</b> How long have you been here?	男人：你們在這兒多久了？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒmen zài zhèr liǎng tiān le.	女人：我们在这儿两天了。
<b>Woman:</b> We have been here for two days.	女人：我們在這兒兩天了。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐmen yào dāi duō jǐu?	男人：你们要待多久？
<b>Man:</b> You want to stay how long?	男人：你們要待多久？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Wǒ bù zhīdao. Kěnéng yí gè xīngqī. Kěnéng liǎng gè xīngqī.	女人：我不知道。可能一个星期。可能两个星期。
<b>Woman:</b> I don't know. Perhaps one week. Perhaps two weeks.	女人：我不知道。可能一個星期。可能兩個星期。

(qǐngwèn) *What does that mean?*

Shénme yìsi?

(Pǔtōnghuà *meaning zěnmē shuō?*)

yìsi

(shì shì wèn) *How do you say?*

Zěnmē shuō?

(shì shì wèn)

*In Mandarin, how do you say two weeks?*

Pǔtōnghuà zěnmē shuō two weeks?

(qǐngwèn) *What does that mean?*

Shénme yìsi?

(Pǔtōnghuà *meaning zěnmē shuō?*)

yìsi

(shì shì wèn) *How do you say?*

(zěnmē shuō?)

(shì shì wèn) *In Mandarin, How do you say two weeks?*

(Pǔtōnghuà *two weeks zěnmē shuō?*)

(xiànzài qǐng shuō) *We are American.*

Wǒmen shì Měiguó rén.

*We are located here. (zěnmē shuō?)*

Wǒmen zài zhèr.

(qǐngwèn) *For how long or  
It has been how long?*

Duō jǐu le?  
Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jǐu le?

(huí dá) *For a few weeks.*

Jǐ gè xīngqī le.

*We are going to stay.*

Wǒmen yào dāi.

*A few days.*

Jǐ tiān.

(shì shì shuō) *I like China.*

Wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó.

03:00

(Wèn tā xǐhuan bù xǐhuan Běijīng.)

Nǐ xǐhuan Běijīng ma?  
Nǐ xǐhuan bù xǐhuan Běijīng?

(qǐng shuō) *Yes. I like Beijing.*

Xǐhuan. Wǒ xǐhuan Běijīng.

Say to the woman and her husband  
*You are going to stay.*

Nǐmen yào dāi.

*How long?*

Duō jǐu?

*For how long? (zěnmě wèn?)*

Duō jǐu le?

*You have been here for how long?*

Nǐmen zài zhèr duō jǐu le?

*For two weeks. (zěnmě shuō?)*

liǎng gè xīngqī le.

*We bought. (zěnmě shuō?)*

Wǒmen mǎi le.

Do you remember how to ask her if she bought  
anything?

Nǐ mǎi le dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi?

How would she tell you that she didn't buy  
anything?

Wǒ méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi.

(zài wèn yíci) *Did you buy anything?*

Nǐ mǎi le dōngxi ma?  
Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi?

06:00

To answer yes, you say literally, *bought*. Try it.

Mǎi le.

*Yes. I bought something.*

Mǎi le. Wǒ mǎi le yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

(qǐng shuō) *I bought.*

Wǒ mǎi le.

*A lot of things.*

Hěn duō dōngxi.

Now ask the man and his wife  
*What about you?*

Nǐmen ne?

(qǐngwèn) <i>Did you buy anything?</i>	Nǐmen mǎi le dōngxi ma? Nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi?
(huí dá) <i>No.</i>	Méiyǒu.
<i>We didn't buy anything. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Wǒmen méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We would not like to buy anything.</i>	Wǒmen bù xiǎng mǎi dōngxi.
(qǐng shuō) <i>We don't have the time.</i>	Wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.
Ask the woman and her husband <i>What about you?</i>	Nǐmen ne?
Ask them if they bought anything.	Nǐmen mǎi le dōngxi ma? Nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu mǎi dōngxi?
(shì shì shuō) <i>We bought a lot of things.</i>	Wǒmen mǎi le hěn duō dōngxi.
<i>We ate. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Wǒmen chī le.
And do you remember how to say <i>We arrived yesterday?</i>	
<i>When?</i>	09:00
<i>Yesterday.</i>	Wǒmen shì zuótiān dàodá. Shénme shíhou? Zuótiān.
Say to the two of them <i>You arrived yesterday.</i>	Nǐmen shì zuótiān dàodá.
(xiànzài shì shì wèn) <i>When did you arrive?</i>	Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dàodá?
Here's the answer <i>Yesterday morning.</i> (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)	Zuótiān zǎoshàng.
<i>In the morning. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	
1. zǎoshàng	早上
早上	早上
◀ The tones are falling/rising and falling. (qǐng shuō) <i>Yesterday morning.</i>	Zuótiān zǎoshàng.
(shì shì shuō) <i>This morning.</i>	Jīntiān zǎoshàng.
(zài wèn yíci) <i>When did you arrive?</i>	Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dàodá?
<i>We arrived yesterday. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	12:00
(qǐng gēn zhè shuō) <i>When did you arrive in Beijing?</i>	Wǒmen shì zuótiān dàodá. Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dào Běijīng dá?

Notice the word order.	Dào Běijīng dá.	
(zài shuō yíci) <i>When did you arrive in Beijing?</i>	Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dào Běijīng dá?	
<i>We arrived yesterday morning.</i>	Wǒmen shì zuótiān zǎoshàng dàodá.	
(qǐng shuō) <i>I arrived yesterday.</i>	Wǒ shì zuótiān dàodá.	
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>With my family.</i>	Gēn wǒ de jiārén yìqǐ.	
(shì shì shuō) <i>I arrived with my family.</i>	Wǒ shì gēn wǒ de jiārén yìqǐ dàodá.	
<i>With my three children. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Gēn wǒ de sān gè xiǎoháir yìqǐ.	15:00
(shì shì shuō) <i>With my two sons.</i>	Gēn wǒ de liǎng gè érzi yìqǐ.	
<i>With my daughter. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Gēn wǒ de nǚér yìqǐ.	
(xiànzài qǐng shuō) <i>I arrived with my husband.</i>	Wǒ shì gēn wǒ de xiānsheng yìqǐ dàodá.	
<i>We arrived together.</i>	Wǒmen shì yìqǐ dàodá.	
<i>At what time? (zěnmē wèn?)</i>	Jǐ diǎn zhōng?	
(zài wèn yíci) <i>When did you arrive?</i> Continue to use the plural.	Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dàodá?	
(qǐng shuō) <i>We arrived at 8 o'clock.</i>	Wǒmen shì bā diǎn dàodá.	
(xiànzài shì shì shuō) <i>I arrived yesterday morning</i>	Wǒ shì zuótiān zǎoshàng dàodá.	
<i>I arrived at 9 o'clock</i>	Wǒ shì jiǔ diǎn zhōng dàodá.	
Ask the man <i>What about you?</i> <i>When did you arrive in Beijing?</i>	Nǐ ne? Nǐ shì shénme shíhou dào Běijīng dá?	
<i>Yesterday. (zěnmē shuō?)</i>	Zuótiān.	18:00
(shì shì shuō) <i>Yesterday evening.</i>	Zuótiān wǎnshang.	
<i>I like Beijing.</i>	Wǒ xǐhuan Běijīng.	
Ask her when they arrived in Beijing.	Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dào Běijīng dá?	
<i>Did you go? (qǐng gēn zhè shuō)</i>	Nǐmen qù le ma?	
(zài wèn yíci)	Nǐmen qù le ma?	

(shì shì wèn) <i>Did you go to Tiantan?</i>		Nǐmen qù le Tiāntán ma?	
2.	Tiāntán	天坛	天壇
This is a historical site in Beijing.			
(shì shì shuō) <i>You went to Tiantan yesterday.</i>		Nǐmen zuótiān qù le Tiāntán.	
(zài wèn yíci) <i>Did you go?</i>		Nǐmen qù le ma?	
(qǐngwèn) <i>Did you go to Tiantan?</i>		Nǐmen qù le Tiāntán ma?	
(xiànzài qǐngwèn) <i>When did you go to Tiantan?</i>		Nǐmen shénme shíhou qù le Tiāntán?	
		21:00	
(qǐng shuō) <i>We went to Tiantan today.</i>		Wǒmen jīntiān qù le Tiāntán.	
<i>This morning. (zěnme shuō?)</i>		Jīntiān zǎoshàng.	
(shì shì shuō) <i>We went to Tiantan this morning.</i>		Wǒmen jīntiān zǎoshàng qù le Tiāntán.	
(qǐng shuō) <i>We went to Hong Kong yesterday.</i>		Wǒmen zuótiān qù le Xiānggǎng.	
(shì shì shuō) <i>I went to Beijing today.</i>		Wǒ jīntiān qù le Běijīng.	
<i>I went to Hong Kong yesterday morning.</i>		Wǒ zuótiān zǎoshàng qù le Xiānggǎng.	
Ask her if she went to Beijing.		Nǐ qù le Běijīng ma? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qù Běijīng?	
(qǐngwèn) <i>When did you go?</i>		Nǐ shénme shíhou qù le?	
<i>When did you arrive? (zěnme wèn?)</i>		Nǐ shì shénme shíhou dào dá?	
		24:00	
(shì shì wèn) <i>When did you arrive in China?</i> Use the plural.		Nǐmen shì shénme shíhou dào Zhōngguó dá?	
<i>We arrived yesterday.</i>		Wǒmen shì zuótiān dào dá.	
(shì shì wèn) <i>How long are you going to stay?</i>		Nǐmen yào dāi duō jǐu?	
(qǐng shuō) <i>One week.</i>		Yí gè xīngqī. Wǒmen yào dāi yí gè xīngqī.	
<i>Then we're going to leave.</i>		Ránhòu wǒmen yào zǒu le.	
<i>We don't have time. (zěnme shuō?)</i>		Wǒmen méiyǒu shíjiān.	
<i>We are going to leave tomorrow.</i>		Wǒmen míngtiān yào zǒu le.	
<i>We went to Beijing this morning.</i>		Wǒmen jīntiān zǎoshàng qù le Běijīng.	

(qǐng shuō) *We went to Tiantan yesterday.*

Wǒmen zuótiān qù le Tiāntán.

27:00

(shì shì shuō)  
*We ate something at a restaurant.*

Wǒmen zài fàndiàn chī le yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

(xiànzài qǐng shuō)  
*We ate something at the Beijing Restaurant.*

Wǒmen zài Běijīng fàndiàn chī le yìdiǎnr dōngxi.

(qǐng wèn) *Where is the Beijing Restaurant?*

Běijīng fàndiàn zài nǎr?

**Nǚrén:** Zài Wángfǔjǐng.

3.	Wángfǔjǐng	王府井	王府井
----	------------	-----	-----

Ask what that means.

Shénme yìsi?

That means.

Yìsi shì.  
Yìsi shì zài Wángfǔjǐng.

This is a neighborhood in Beijing. How does she tell you that the Beijing Restaurant is located in Wángfǔjǐng?

Běijīng fàndiàn zài Wángfǔjǐng.

Now listen to this Mandarin conversation. You should now be able to understand the entire conversation

<b>Nánrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo.	男人：你好。
<b>Man:</b> Hello.	男人：你好。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ hǎo. Nǐ shì shénme shíhou dàodá?	女人：你好。你是什么时候到达？
<b>Woman:</b> Hello. When did you arrive?	女人：你好。你什麼時候到達？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒ gēn wǒ de tàitai shì zuótiān dàodá.	男人：我跟我的太太是昨天到达。
<b>Man:</b> My wife and I arrived yesterday.	男人：我跟我的太太是昨天到達。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐmen shénme shíhou qù le Tiāntán?	女人：你们什么时候去了天坛？
<b>Woman:</b> When did you go to Tiantan?	女人：你們什麼時候去了天壇？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Wǒmen jīntiān zǎoshàng qù le Tiāntán.	男人：我们今天早上去了天坛。
<b>Man:</b> We went to Tiantan yesterday morning.	男人：我們今天早上去了天壇。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Nǐ jīntiān xiǎng gēn wǒ yìqǐ chī wǎnfàn ma?	女人：你今天想跟我一起吃晚饭吗？
<b>Woman:</b> Would you like to eat dinner with me today?	女人：你今天想跟我一起吃晚飯嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Xiǎng. Jǐ diǎn zhōng?	男人：想。几点钟？
<b>Man:</b> Yes. What time?	男人：想。幾點鐘？
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Bā diǎn zhōng. Hǎo ma?	女人：八点钟。好吗？
<b>Woman:</b> 8 o'clock, OK?	女人：八點鐘。好嗎？
<b>Nánrén:</b> Hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.	男人：好。谢谢你。

---

<b>Man:</b> OK. Thank you.	男人: 好。謝謝你。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Búkèqì.	女人: 不客气。
<b>Woman:</b> Don't mention it.	女人: 不客氣。
<b>Nánrén:</b> Zàijiàn.	男人: 再見。
<b>Man:</b> Goodbye.	男人: 再見。
<b>Nǚrén:</b> Zàijiàn.	女人: 再見。
<b>Woman:</b> Goodbye.	女人: 再見。

This is the end of unit 30. The last unit of Mandarin I.

30:00



## Pimsleur Mandarin Chinese Companion Glossary

## I. Vocabulary Words

English	Type	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional	Unit
add/plus	V	jiā	加	加	13
adult	N	dàrén	大人	大人	23
again	Adv.	zài...yíci	再...一次	再...一次	22
airplane	N	fēijī	飞机	飛機	22
airport	N	fēijīchǎng	飞机场	飛機場	22
alone	Adj.	yí gè rén	一个人	一個人	27
also, too	Adv.	yě	也	也	6
am/is/are (to be)	V	shì	是	是	1
American dollars	N	měijīn	美金	美金	13
and	Cnj.	hé	和	和	19
*answer, to	V	huídá	回答	回答	12
anything	N	dōngxi	东西	東西	5
are/is/am (to be)	V	shì	是	是	1
arrive	V	dàodá	到达	到達	29
bathroom/ washroom	N	xǐshǒujiān	洗手间	洗手間	21
be, to	V	shì	是	是	1
because	Cnj.	yīnwèi	因为	因為	25
beer	N	píjiǔ	啤酒	啤酒	7
big	Adj.	dà	大	大	20
bother/trouble/ please	V	máfan	麻烦	麻煩	18
but	Cnj.	kěshì	可是	可是	3
buy, to	V	mǎi	买	買	8
café	N	kāfēitīng	咖啡厅	咖啡廳	7
can/able to/know how to	V	huì	会	會	1

can/able to/permitted to	V	kěyǐ	可以	可以	15
child	N	xiǎoháir	小孩儿	小孩兒	20
Chinese Language	N	pǔtōnghuà	普通话	普通話	1
close	V	guān	关	關	25
closed	Adj.	guān mén	关门	關門	25
college	N	xuéyuàn	学院	學院	4
come in/enter	V	jìn	进	進	19
Common Language (Mandarin Chinese)	N	pǔtōnghuà	普通話	普通话	1
*conversation	N	duìhuà	对话	對話	11
daughter	N	nǚér	女儿	女兒	20
dinner	N	wǎnfàn	晚饭	晚飯	11
do, to	V	zuò	做	做	8
don't have	V	méiyǒu	没有	沒有	13
door	N	mén	门	門	25
drink, to	V	hē	喝	喝	5
eat, to	V	chī	吃	吃	5
English	N, Adj.	Yīngwén	英文	英文	1
enough	Adv.	gòu	够	夠	16
enter/come in	V	jìn	进	進	19
evening	Adv.	wǎnshang	晚上	晚上	11
expensive	Adj.	gùì	贵	貴	17
family	N	jiārén	家人	家人	21
far	Adj.	yuǎn	远	遠	23
fast	Adj.	kuài	快	快	17
field	N	chǎng	场	場	22
flight	N	bānjī	班机	班機	23
friend	N	péngyǒu	朋友	朋友	26
give, to	V	gěi	给	給	14

go, to	V	qù	去	去	6
go/leave	V	zǒu	走	走	27
good/well	Adj.	hǎo	好	好	2
hat	N	màozi	帽子	帽子	18
have	V	yǒu	有	有	13
he/him	Prn.	tā	他	他	19
here	Adv.	zhèr	这儿	這兒	4
here you are	Excl.	nò	诶	訥	13
Hong Kong Dollars	N	gǎngbì	港币	港幣	24
hotel	N	jiǔdiàn	酒店	酒店	8
hour	N	xiǎoshí	小时	小時	22
husband	N	xiānsheng	先生	先生	18
I/me	Prn.	wǒ	我	我	1
impossible	Adj.	bù xíng	不行	不行	9
in that case/so	Adv.	nàme	那么	那麼	11
inside	Prep.	lǐ	里	裏	22
is/am/are (to be)	V	shì	是	是	1
know, to (have knowledge of)	V	zhīdao	知道	知道	5
late	Adj.	wǎn	晚	晚	25
later	Adv.	guò yìhuǐr	过一会儿	過一會兒	6
leave/go	V	zǒu	走	走	27
left side	N	zuǒbian	左边	左邊	24
like/be pleased with	V	xǐhuan	喜欢	喜歡	29
*listen, to	V	tīng	听	聽	1 1
little (in quantity)	Adv.	shǎo	少	少	14
little/some	Adv.	yìdiǎnr	一點兒	一點兒	1
live/reside	V	zhù	住	住	19
located	V, Adv.	zài	在	在	4

long (distance)	Adj.	cháng	长	長	4
lunch	N	wǔfàn	午饭	午飯	8
Mandarin (in China)	N	pǔtōnghuà	普通話	普通話	1
Mandarin (in Hong Kong/Taiwan)	N	guóyǔ	国语	國語	24
meaning	N	yìsi	意思	意思	28
miss	N	xiǎojie	小姐	小姐	8
mister	N	xiānsheng	先生	先生	8
money	N	qián	钱	錢	12
morning/ good morning	N, Adj., Adv.	zǎo	早	早	29
much	Adv.	duō	多	多	14
newspaper	N	bàozhǐ	报纸	報紙	14
no/not	Adv.	bù	不	不	1
now	Adv.	xiànzài	现在	現在	6
only	Adv.	jiù	就	就	27
open	V	kāi	开	開	25
or (question)	Cnj.	háishì	还是	還是	8
or (stative)	Cnj.	huòzhě	或者	或者	9
order, to/ want, to	V	yào	要	要	8
peace	Adj., N	ān	安	安	4
People's currency	N	Rénmínbì	人民币	人民幣	12
perhaps	Adv.	kěnéng	可能	可能	26
person/people	N	rén	人	人	1
place	N	nàr	那儿	那兒	6
please	V	qǐng	请	請	19
plus/add	V	jiā	加	加	13
*question	N	wèntí	问题	問題	12
relatively	Adv.	bǐjiào	比较	比較	18
*reply, to	V	huídá	回答	回答	12

restaurant	N	fàndiàn	饭店	飯店	7
right side	N	yòubian	右边	右邊	24
road	N	lù	路	路	4
see, to	V	kàn	看	看	26
she/her	Prn.	tā	她	她	19
should	V	yīnggāi	应该	應該	24
sit/travel/ride	V	zuò	坐	坐	22
small	Adj.	xiǎo	小	小	21
something	N	yìdiǎnr dōngxi	一点儿东西	一點兒東西	5
son	N	érzi	儿子	兒子	20
speak, to	V	shuō	說	說	1
stay, to	V	dāi	待	待	26
store	N	shāngdiàn	商店	商店	25
street	N	jiē	街	街	4
study, to	V	xué	学	學	4
tea	N	chá	茶	茶	7
*telephone	N	diànhuà	电话	電話	12
thanks	V	xièxie	谢谢	謝謝	2
then	Adv.	ránhòu	然后	然後	24
there	Adv.	nàr	那儿	那兒	4
they/them	Prn.	tāmen	他们	他們	19
thing/anything	N	dōngxi	东西	東西	5
think, to	V	xiǎng	想	想	26
time, certain period of	Adv.	jiǔ	久	久	28
time/the time	N	shíjiān	时间	時間	28
today	Adv.	jīntiān	今天	今天	11
together	Adv.	yìqǐ	一起	一起	8
tomorrow	Adv.	míngtiān	明天	明天	11
too bad/pity	N	yíhàn	遗憾	遺憾	28

too/excessive	Adv.	tài	太	太	16
*try, to	V	shì	试	試	22
understand (situation)	V	míngbai	明白	明白	4
unit/piece	N	kuài	块	塊	12
*use, to	V	yòng	用	用	22
very	Adv.	hěn	很	很	2
*waiter	N	fúwùyuán	服务员	服務員	13
walk/go	V	zǒu	走	走	23
want, to/ order, to	V	yào	要	要	8
water	N	shuǐ	水	水	18
we/us	Prn.	wǒmen	我们	我們	19
week	N	xīngqī	星期	星期	29
what	Prn.	shénme	什么	什麼	4
when	Adv.	shénme shíhou	什么时候	什麼時候	6
where	Adv.	nǎr	哪儿	哪兒	4
which (question)	Prn.	nǎ	哪	哪	23
who/whom	Prn.	shéi	谁	誰	8
why?	Adv.	wèi shénme	为什么	爲什麼	25
wife	N	tàitai	太太	太太	18
with	Prep.	gēn	跟	跟	8
work	N, V	gōngzuò	工作	工作	26
would like	V	xiǎng	想	想	5
yesterday	Adv.	zuótiān	昨天	昨天	29
you	Prn.	nǐ	你	你	1
you (plural)	Prn.	nǐmen	你们	你們	19
young/younger	Adj.	xiǎo	小	小	21

## Abbreviations

N	Noun	Adv.	Adverb
V	Verb	Prep.	Preposition
Prn.	pronoun	Cnj.	Conjunction
Adj.	Adjective		

\* indicates word used in PMC, but is not elaborated upon

## II. Particles

(no direct translation in English)

Description	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional	Unit
(le) Indicates past action	le	了	了	16
(de) Describes action/possession	de	的	的	2
(ma) Indicates question	ma	嗎	吗	1
(ne) how about.../ question under consideration/ continued action	ne	呢	呢	3
(ba) let's say	ba	吧	吧	11
(o) an expression of surprise	ó	哦	哦	21

## III. Phrases

English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional	Unit
as for me...	wǒ ā	我啊	我啊	10
don't mention it	búkèqì	不客气	不客氣	14
excuse me/sorry	dùibuqǐ	对不起	對不起	1
for you	gěi nǐ de	给你的	給你的	15
goodbye	zàijiàn	再见	再見	2
hello	nǐ hǎo	你好	你好	2
how are you	nǐ hǎo ma	你好吗	你好嗎	2
how many days?	jǐ tiān	几天	幾天	26
how many	jǐ gè	几个	幾個	20
how much	duōshǎo	多少	多少	12
impossible	bù xíng	不行	不行	9
in the morning	zǎoshàng	早上	早上	30

may I ask	qǐngwèn	请问	請問	1
please come in	qǐng jìn	请进	請進	19
really	zhēn de	真的	真的	21
see you later	yì huǐr jiàn	一会儿见	一會兒見	15
see you tomorrow	míngtiān jiàn	明天见	明天見	11
straight ahead	yī zhí wǎng qián	一直往前	一直往前	23
wait a moment	děng yìhuǐr	等一会儿	等一會兒	21
what time	jǐ diǎn zhōng	几点钟	幾點鐘	9

#### IV. Locations

English	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional	Unit
American/ United States	Měiguó	美国	美國	1
Beijing	Běijīng	北京	北京	7
China	Zhōngguó	中国	中國	3
College Road	Xuéyuàn Lù	学院路	學院路	4
Hong Kong	Xiānggǎng	香港	香港	22
King's Road	Yīngwáng Dào	英王道	英王到	24
Long Peace Street	Cháng ān Jiē	长安街	長安街	4
Maxine's Restaurant	Měixīn fàndiàn	美新饭店	美新飯店	24
Tiantan (Temple of Heaven)	Tiāntán	天坛	天壇	30
Washington	Huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	華盛頓	19
Wangfujing	Wángfǔjǐng	王府井	王府井	30



## V. Numbers

English	Pinyin	Simplified/Traditional	Unit
1	yī	一	9
2 (counting)	èr	二	12
2 (of something)	liǎng	两	8
3	sān	三	10
4	sì	四	10
5	wǔ	五	10
6	liù	六	11
7	qī	七	11
8	bā	八	9
9	jiǔ	九	9
10	shí	十	11
hundred	bǎi	百	23
thousand	qiān	千	22

## VI. Measure Words

(most measure words can also be nouns, depending on the context)

Description	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional	Unit
all-purpose measure word	gè	个	個	20
for liquid containers such as cups	bēi	杯	杯	8
things that come in solid pieces such as money (coins)	kuài	块	塊	12
measure word for hats, caps	dǐng	顶	頂	18
for long, narrow things such as roads, pants	tiáo	条	條	24

## VII. Common Chinese Names

English Spelling	Pinyin	Simplified	Traditional
Cai, Tsai	Cài	蔡	蔡
Chen	Chén	陈	陳
Huang, Hwang	Huáng	黄	黃
Lee, Li	Lǐ	李	李
Lin	Lín	林	林
Wang	Wáng	王	王
Wu	Wú	吴	吳
Yang	Yáng	杨	楊
Zhang, Chang	Zhāng	张	張